

**2017**  
The **ONLY OFFICIAL**  
handbook for the Life in the UK test

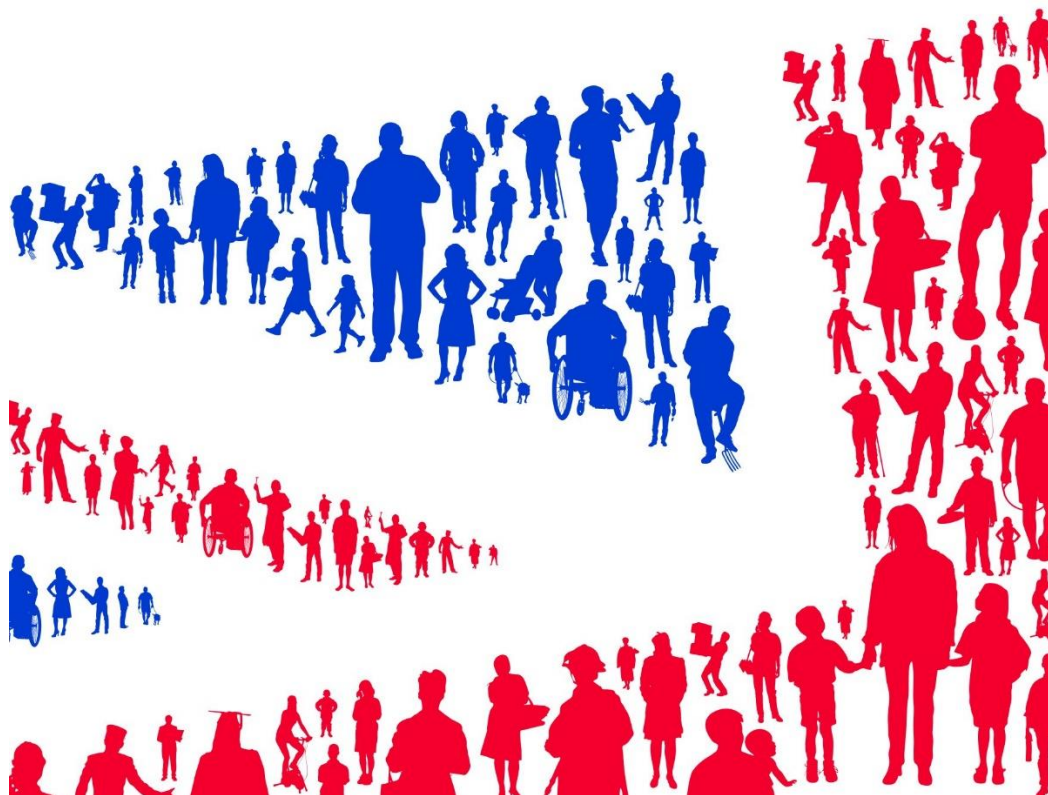
  
tso  
part of Williams Lea Ltd  
Published by TSO on  
behalf of the Home Office

  
Home Office

# Life in the United Kingdom

A Guide for New Residents

3<sup>rd</sup> Edition



英國生活常識測試

全部以英語進行

請根據英文版為準

中文翻譯僅供參考

# Chapter 1: Values and Principles of the UK

Britain is a fantastic place to live: a modern, thriving society with a long and illustrious history. Our people have been at the heart of the world's political, scientific, industrial and cultural development. We are proud of our record of welcoming new migrants who will add to the diversity and dynamism of our national life.

Applying to become a permanent resident or citizen of the UK is an important decision and commitment. You will be agreeing to accept the responsibilities which go with permanent residence and to respect the laws, values and traditions of the UK. Good citizens are an asset to the UK. We welcome those seeking to make a positive contribution to our society.

Passing the Life in the UK Test is part of demonstrating that you are ready to become a permanent migrant to the UK. This ebook is designed to support you in your preparation. It will help you to integrate into society and play a full role in your local community. It will also help ensure that you have a broad general knowledge of the culture, laws and history of the UK.

## The Values and Principles of the UK

British society is founded on fundamental values and principles which all those living in the UK should respect and support. These values are reflected in the responsibilities, rights and privileges of being a British citizen or permanent resident of the UK. They are based on history and traditions and are protected by law, customs and expectations. There is no place in British society for extremism or intolerance.

The fundamental principles of British life include:

- Democracy
- The rule of law
- Individual liberty
- Tolerance of those with different faiths and beliefs
- Participation in community life.

As part of the citizenship ceremony, new citizens pledge to uphold these values. The pledge is:

'I will give my loyalty to the United Kingdom and respect its rights and freedoms. I will uphold its democratic values. I will observe its laws faithfully and fulfil my duties and obligations as a British citizen.'

Following from the fundamental principles are **responsibilities and freedoms** which are shared by all those living in the UK and which we expect all residents to respect.

## 1: 英國的價值觀和原則

英國是一個十分理想的居住地方，是一個現代、繁榮而且具有悠久輝煌歷史的社會。我們的人民一直處於世界政治、科學、工業和文化發展的中心。同時，我們亦以歡迎能為國家注入多樣性和活力的新移民而見稱。

申請成為英國永久居民或公民是個重要的決定和承諾。你必須同意接受給予永久居民的義務，並尊重英國的法律、價值和傳統。良好公民就如我們重要的資產。所有能為社會作出貢獻都將得到認同。

通過英國生活常識測試移民到英國的其中一部分。

這本手冊正是為準備移民英國的你而設。它將助你融入社會，並在當地社區充分發揮所長；也有助你掌握廣泛的英國文化、法律和歷史知識。

英國社會是建基於人民所擁護的基本價值觀和原則。這些以歷史和傳統、法律、習俗和期望為基礎的價值，都一一反映於英國公民或永久居民的責任、權利和特權。相反，極端主義是不被接納的。

英國的基本原則包括：

- 民主精神
- 依法而治
- 個人自由
- 包容不同宗教和信仰
- 社區參與

作為公民宣誓儀式的一部分，新公民將作以下宣誓：

作為英國公民，我將忠誠於大英帝國，尊重它的權利和自由，支持它的民主價值觀，並切實遵守它的法律，履行應盡的職責和義務。

所有英國居民所享有的**責任和自由**也得受到尊重。

If you wish to be a permanent resident or citizen of the UK, you should:

- Respect and obey the law
- Respect the rights of others, including their right to their own opinions
- Treat others with fairness
- Look after yourself and your family
- Look after the area in which you live and the environment.

In return, the UK offers:

- freedom of belief and religion
- freedom of speech
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- a right to a fair trial
- a right to join in the election of a government.

## 1.1 Becoming a Permanent Resident

To apply to become a permanent resident or citizen of the UK, you will need to:

- speak and read English
- have a good understanding of life in the UK.

There are currently (as of January 2013) two ways you can be tested on these requirements:

- Take the Life in the UK test. The questions are written in a way that requires an understanding of the English language at English for Speakers of Other Languages (ESOL) Entry Level 3, so there is no need to take a separate English language test. People here on work visas, including those on Tier 1 and Tier 2 of the points based system, normally must pass the Life in the UK test to become permanent residents.
- Pass an ESOL course in English with Citizenship. You will need to take this course if your standard of English is below ESOL Entry Level 3. The course will help you to improve your English and learn more about life in the UK. At the end of the course you will take a test.

Once you have passed one of these tests, you can make an application for permanent residence or British citizenship. The form that you have to complete and the evidence that you need to provide will depend on your personal circumstances. There is a fee for submitting an application, which is different for the various types of application. All of the forms and a list of fees can be found on the UK Border Agency website, [www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk](http://www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk).

假若你想成為英國的永久居民或公民，你應該：

- 尊重和遵守法律
- 尊重他人的權利，包括他們擁有自己意見的權利
- 公平待人
- 照顧自己和家人
- 愛護你所居住的區域和環境

作為回報，英國會提供：

- 信仰和宗教自由
- 言論自由
- 免受不公平歧視的自由
- 獲得公正審判的權利
- 投票選出政府的選舉權利

## 1.1 成為永久居民

申請成為英國永久居民或公民，你將要：

- 能講和閱讀英語
- 明確了解在英國的生活

截至 2013 年 1 月，你會以以下兩種方式進行測試

- 參與英國生活常識測試。試題將以等同英語認證 (ESOL) 入門 3 級的程度出題，所以沒有必要再參加相同英語考試。申請工作簽證者，包括那些計分制一級及二級，一般必須通過英國生活常識測試方能成為永久居民。
- 通過公民英語認證。如果你的英語水平低於 ESOL 入門 3 級，你將要再次參與課程。本課程將幫助你提高你的英語水平，並了解更多在關於英國的生活。在課程結束時，你將需要參與一個測試。

一旦通過其一個測試，你將可提出成為英國公民身份的申請。你需要提供的表格和證明取決於您的個人情況。不同類型的申請費用也有所不同。所帶表格和費用清單都可在英國邊境管理局的網站 ([www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk](http://www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk)) 上找到。

From October 2013, the requirements will change. From that date, for settlement or permanent residence, you will need to:

- Pass the Life in the UK test

#### AND

Produce acceptable evidence of speaking and listening skills in English at B1 of the Common European Framework of Reference. This is equivalent to ESOL Entry Level 3.

The requirements for citizenship applications may also change in the future. Further details will be published on the UK Border Agency website and you should check the information on that website for current requirements before applying for settlement or citizenship.

## 1.2 Taking the Life in the UK Test

This eBook will help prepare you for taking the Life in the UK test. The test consists of 24 questions about important aspects of life in the UK. Questions are based on ALL parts of the handbook. The 24 questions will be different for each person taking the test at that test session.

The Life in the UK test is usually taken in English, although special arrangements can be made if you wish to take it in Welsh or Scottish Gaelic.

You can only take the test at a registered and approved Life in the UK test centre. There are about 60 test centres around the UK. You can only book your test online, at [www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk](http://www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk). You should not take your test at any other establishment as the UK Border Agency will only accept certificates from registered test centres. If you live on the Isle of Man or in the Channel Islands, there are different arrangements for taking the Life in the UK test.

When booking your test, read the instructions carefully. Make sure you enter your details correctly. You will need to take some identification and proof of your address with you to the test. If you don't take these, you will not be able to take the test.

從 2013 年 10 月，該要求將會更新。自該日起，要成為永久居留或英國公民身份，您將需要：

- 通過英國生活常識測試

#### 及

提交在歐洲共同語言參考標準 B1 英文口語和聽力技能的證明。這相當於 ESOL 入門級 3。

入籍申請的要求可能在未來作出更改。進一步詳情將刊登在英國邊境管理局的網站，而申請者應在申請定居或入籍之前檢查該網站的最新信息。

## 1.2 參與英國生活常識測試

這本手冊將幫助你準備應考英國生活常識測試。該測試包括 24 個有關在英國生活重要方面的問題。問題覆蓋手冊的所有部分。在同一環節，每人的問題都各帶出入。

除非要求特別安排以威爾士或蘇格蘭的蓋爾語考核，英國生活常識測試一般以英文進行。

你只能在註冊和批准的試場進行英國生活常識測試。有英國各地的約 60 個考點。你只在線上 ([www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk](http://www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk)) 預留測試名額。英國邊境管理局將只接受從註冊的測試中心所發的證書，因此請勿在其他機構應考。如果你住在馬恩島或海峽群島，將有特別安排。

預留測試名額前，請仔細閱讀說明書。確保正確輸入你的個人資料。考試時你需要隨身攜帶地證明，否則你將不能參加考試。

## 1.2.1 How to use this eBook

Everything that you will need to know to pass the Life in the UK test is included in this eBook. The questions will be based on the whole book, including this introduction, so make sure you study the entire book thoroughly. The handbook has been written to ensure that anyone who can read English at ESOL Entry Level 3 or above should have no difficulty with the language.

The glossary at the back of the handbook contains some key words and phrases, which you might find helpful.

The 'Check that you understand' boxes are for guidance. They will help you to identify particular things that you should understand. Just knowing the things highlighted in these boxes will not be enough to pass the test. You need to make sure that you understand everything in the book, so please read the information carefully.

## 1.2.2 Where to find more information

You can find out more information from the following places:

- The UK Border Agency website ([www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk](http://www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk)) for more information about the application process and the forms you will need to complete
- The Life in the UK test website ([www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk](http://www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk)) for more information about the test and how to book a place to take one
- Gov.uk ([www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk)) for information about ESOL courses and how to find one in your area.

### Check that you understand:

- The origin of the values underlying British society
- The fundamental principles of British life
- The responsibilities and freedoms which come with permanent residence
- The process of becoming a permanent resident or citizen.

## 1.2.1 使用此手冊

一切所需通過英國生活常識測試的資料都記錄於此手冊。問題將覆蓋整本手冊，包括本介紹，所以務必深入學習全書。任何 ESOL 入門第 3 級或以上人，該能明白用於書寫本手冊的英文。

在手冊後面的詞彙表包含一些關鍵詞和短語，可能有助理解。

“確保明白”將引導閱讀。他們會幫助你識須要明白的資料。但只知道這強調的東西是不夠通過測試。你需要確保你明白所有，因此請仔細閱。

## 1.1.2 更多資料

你可以在以下地方找到更多資訊：

- 英國邊境管理局網站 ([www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk](http://www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk)) - 有關申請程序及相關表格
- 英國生活常識測試網站 ([www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk](http://www.lifeintheuktest.gov.uk)) - 有關考試及預留名額方法
- 英國政府 ([www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk)) - 有關英語認證 (ESOL) 課程及地點

### Check that you understand

- 英國社會價值觀的由來
- 英國生活的基本原則
- 永久居住權下的責任和自由
- 成為永久居民或公民的過程

## Chapter 2: What is the UK?

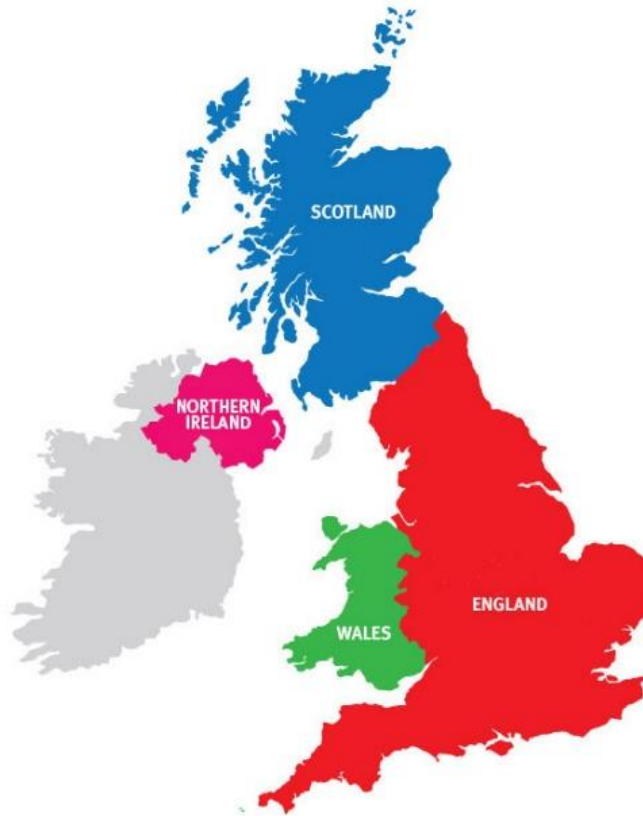
The UK is made up of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. The rest of Ireland is an independent country.

The official name of the country is the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. 'Great Britain' refers only to England, Scotland and Wales, not to Northern Ireland. The words 'Britain', 'British Isles' or 'British', however, are used in this book to refer to everyone in the UK.

There are also several islands which are closely linked with the UK but are not part of it: the Channel Islands and the Isle of Man. These have their own governments and are called 'Crown dependencies'. There are also several British overseas territories in other parts of the world, such as St Helena and the Falkland Islands. They are also linked to the UK but are not a part of it.

The UK is governed by the parliament sitting in Westminster. Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland also have parliaments or assemblies of their own, with devolved powers in defined areas.

*The countries that make up the UK: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland*



### Check that you understand:

- The different countries that make up the UK

## 2: 英國是怎樣的國家?

英國由英格蘭·蘇格蘭·威爾士和北愛爾蘭組成。愛爾蘭的其餘部分是另一個獨立的國家。

國家的正式名稱是大不列顛及北愛爾蘭聯合王國。“大不列顛”僅指英格蘭·蘇格蘭和威爾士，不包括北愛爾蘭。這本書所指的‘英國’，‘不列顛群島’或‘英國’泛指所有英國人。

附近幾個島嶼與英國相連但並非英國領土，當中包括海峽群島和馬恩島。這些地方擁有自己的政府，同時被稱為“皇家屬地”。也有部分英國海外領土處於世界其他地區，就如聖赫勒拿島和福克蘭群島。他們與英國相關，但不是它的一部分。

英國是由座落於西敏宮的議會管轄。蘇格蘭·威爾士和北愛爾蘭也有各自受委任的的議會管轄特定區域。

*組成英國的國家：英格蘭·蘇格蘭·威爾士和北愛爾蘭*

Check that you understand

- 英國下不同的國家

# Chapter 3: A Long and Illustrious History

## Chapter Contents:

- Early Britain
- The Middle Ages
- The Tudors and Stuarts
- A global power
- The 20th century
- Britain since 1945

## 3.1 Early Britain

The first people to live in Britain were hunter-gatherers, in what we call the Stone Age. For much of the Stone Age, Britain was connected to the continent by a land bridge. People came and went, following the herds of deer and horses which they hunted. Britain only became permanently separated from the continent by the Channel about 10,000 years ago.

The first farmers arrived in Britain about 6,000 years ago. The ancestors of these first farmers probably came from south-east Europe. These people built houses, tombs and monuments on the land. One of these monuments, Stonehenge, still stands in what is now the English county of Wiltshire. Stonehenge was probably a special gathering place for seasonal ceremonies. Other Stone Age sites have also survived. Skara Brae on Orkney, off the north coast of Scotland, is the best preserved prehistoric village in northern Europe, and has helped archaeologists to understand more about how people lived near the end of the Stone Age.



The world heritage site of Stonehenge

# 3: 悠久而輝煌的歷史

## 本章內容

- 早期英國
- 中世紀
- 都鐸王朝和斯圖亞特王朝
- 全球大國
- 20 世紀
- 1945 年以來的英國

## 3.1 早期英國

最早期的英國人以狩獵及採集為生，處於我們所謂的石器時代。大部分石器時代的時間，英國都是由陸橋連接到大陸。人們來來往往為的就是追逐鹿及馬羣。大約 1 萬年前，英國才永久脫離大陸，以英吉利海峽為兩岸之隔。

第一批農民在 6000 年前到達英國。這農民的祖先可能來自歐洲的東南面。他們建造房屋，墳墓和紀念碑。其中的一個紀念碑 - 巨石陣，仍然屹立現在威爾特郡的英國縣。有傳巨石陣是個舉行特殊季節性的儀式的聚集地。

其他石器時代的遺址也保留下來。離蘇格蘭北部海岸的斯卡拉布雷在奧克尼郡是北歐保存最完好的史前村落，更是考古學家了解更多關於石器時代結束前人們生活的重要線索。

世界遺產之巨石陣

Around 4,000 years ago, people learned to make bronze. We call this period the Bronze Age. People lived in roundhouses and buried their dead in tombs called round barrows. The people of the Bronze Age were accomplished metalworkers who made many beautiful objects in bronze and gold, including tools, ornaments and weapons. The Bronze Age was followed by the Iron Age, when people learned how to make weapons and tools out of iron. People still lived in roundhouses, grouped together into larger settlements, and sometimes defended sites called hill forts. A very impressive hill fort can still be seen today at Maiden Castle, in the English county of Dorset. Most people were farmers, craft workers or warriors. The language they spoke was part of the Celtic language family. Similar languages were spoken across Europe in the Iron Age, and related languages are still spoken today in some parts of Wales, Scotland and Ireland. The people of the Iron Age had a sophisticated culture and economy. They made the first coins to be minted in Britain, some inscribed with the names of Iron Age kings. This marks the beginnings of British history.

### 3.1.1 The Romans

Julius Caesar led a Roman invasion of Britain in 55 BC. This was unsuccessful and for nearly 100 years Britain remained separate from the Roman Empire. In AD 43 the Emperor Claudius led the Roman army in a new invasion. This time, there was resistance from some of the British tribes but the Romans were successful in occupying almost all of Britain. One of the tribal leaders who fought against the Romans was Boudicca, the queen of the Iceni in what is now eastern England. She is still remembered today and there is a statue of her on Westminster Bridge in London, near the Houses of Parliament.

Areas of what is now Scotland were never conquered by the Romans, and the Emperor Hadrian built a wall in the north of England to keep out the Picts (ancestors of the Scottish people). Included in the wall were a number of forts. Parts of Hadrian's Wall, including the forts of Housesteads and Vindolanda, can still be seen. It is a popular area for walkers and is a UNESCO (United Nations Education, Scientific and Cultural Organization) World Heritage Site.

The Romans remained in Britain for 400 years. They built roads and public buildings, created a structure of law, and introduced new plants and animals. It was during the 3rd and 4th centuries AD that the first Christian communities began to appear in Britain.

大約 4000 年前，人們學會了製造銅。這個時期被稱之為青銅時代。人生活在住在迴旋型屋子，把先人埋葬在圓型古董。青銅時代的人都是傑出的金屬工匠，能以青銅和黃金許多精巧的東西，例如工具，裝飾品和武器。青銅時代後的鐵器時代，人們學會了用鐵製造武器和工具。那時人們仍住在集結成羣的迴旋型屋子，或是據點山丘堡壘。在多塞特郡的英國縣梅登城堡，我們依然能看見一個宏偉的山丘堡壘。當時大多數人都是農民，手工藝者和戰士。他們說的語言是凱爾特語族的一部分。鐵器時代時，整個歐洲也類似的語言，相關語言今天仍通用於威爾士，蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭某部分。鐵器時代的人有一個複雜的文化和經濟。他們的第一個硬幣就是在英國鑄造，有些刻劃有鐵器時代國王的名字。這正好標誌著英國歷史的開端。

### 3.1.1 羅馬人

公元前 55 年凱撒率領羅馬人入侵英國。他們失敗了，近 100 年來英國一直獨立於羅馬帝國。在公元 43 年皇帝克勞迪烏斯率領羅馬軍隊再一次入侵。這一次一些英國部落進行了反抗，但羅馬始終成功的佔領了大部分英國。布狄卡的愛西尼是其中一個反抗羅馬人的部落的首領，她也是當時愛西尼（現在英格蘭東部）皇后。現今在倫敦國會大廈附近的威斯敏斯特大橋雕像就是用於紀念她的事蹟。

現在蘇格蘭地區未曾被羅馬人征服，哈德良皇帝亦在英格蘭北部修建了長城，免受皮克特人（蘇格蘭人民的祖先）襲擊。長城上有些堡壘。哈德良長城的部分，包括豪及文德蘭達的堡壘，至今仍然屹立不倒。這也是步行愛好者的熱點，同時屬於聯合國教科文組織（聯合國教育、科學及文化組織）世界遺產。

羅馬人留在英國 400 年。他們建造道路和公共建築，創造了一個法律架構，並帶來了新的動植。在公元第三和第四世紀第一個基督教團體才開始出現在英國。



### 3.1.2 The Anglo-Saxons

The Roman army left Britain in AD 410 to defend other parts of the Roman Empire and never returned. Britain was again invaded by tribes from northern Europe: the Jutes, the Angles and the Saxons. The languages they spoke are the basis of modern-day English. Battles were fought against these invaders but, by about AD 600, Anglo-Saxon kingdoms were established in Britain. These kingdoms were mainly in what is now England. The burial place of one of the kings was at Sutton Hoo in modern Suffolk. This king was buried with treasure and armour, all placed in a ship which was then covered by a mound of earth. Parts of the west of Britain, including much of what is now Wales, and Scotland, remained free of Anglo-Saxon rule.



*An Anglo-Saxon helmet found at Sutton Hoo – currently on display at the British Museum*

The Anglo-Saxons were not Christians when they first came to Britain but, during this period, missionaries came to Britain to preach about Christianity. Missionaries from Ireland spread the religion in the north. The most famous of these were St Patrick, who would become the patron saint of Ireland and St Columba, who founded a monastery on the island of Iona, off the coast of what is now Scotland. St Augustine led missionaries from Rome, who spread Christianity in the south. St Augustine became the first Archbishop of Canterbury.

### 3.1.3 The Vikings

The Vikings came from Denmark and Norway. They first visited Britain in AD 789 to raid coastal towns and take away goods and slaves. Then, they began to stay and form their own communities in the east of England and Scotland. The Anglo-Saxon kingdoms in England united under King Alfred the Great, who defeated the Vikings. Many of the Viking invaders stayed in Britain – especially in the east and north of England, in an area known as the Danelaw (many places names there, such as Grimsby and Scunthorpe, come from the Viking languages). The Viking settlers mixed with local communities and some converted to Christianity.

Anglo-Saxon kings continued to rule what is now England, except for a short period when there were Danish kings. The first of these was Cnut, also called Canute.

In the north, the threat of attack by Vikings had encouraged the people to unite under one king, Kenneth MacAlpin. The term Scotland began to be used to describe that country.

### 3.1.2 盎格魯撒克遜人

羅馬軍隊在公元 410 離開英國以保衛羅馬帝國的其他地方後再也沒有回來。但英國再次受 朱特、盎格魯和撒克遜人等歐洲北部部落入侵。他們說的語言是現代英語的基礎。侵略者與英人曾進行戰爭，但是大約公元 600 年，盎格魯撒克遜王國正式於英國成立。這些王國主要是在現在的英格蘭。其中一國王之埋葬地點就是在薩頓胡，現代的薩福克郡。陪葬品如珍寶和盔甲都放在船上，然後蓋上土堆。部分英國西部，包括大部分現在屬於威爾士和蘇格地區，仍然免受盎格魯撒克遜的統治。

*在薩頓胡發現盎格魯撒克遜人的頭盔 - 目前陳列在大英博物館*

盎格魯撒克遜人剛到英國時不是基督徒，但在此期間多個傳教士來到英國宣揚基督教。從愛爾蘭的傳教士在北方傳播宗教。其中最有名的是聖帕特里克，被後世稱為愛爾蘭聖徒，和在愛奧那島（現在的蘇格蘭對岸）上建立了修道院的聖高隆。聖奧古斯丁則率領從羅馬來的教士在南方傳播基督教。聖奧古斯丁也成為坎特伯雷首個大主教（請參閱 4.2.1 以取得更多有關今天英國的坎特伯雷大主教和教會）。

### 3.1.3 維京人

維京人是來自丹麥和挪威。他們在公元 789 年首先踏足英國並搶劫海城鎮，帶走的商品和奴隸。然後，他們就開始逗留，漸漸在英格蘭和蘇格蘭東部形成自己的社區。在英格蘭的盎格魯撒克遜王國在擊敗維京人英雄阿爾弗雷德大帝下團結起來。許多維京入侵者住在英國 – 特別是在東部地區和英格蘭北部，被稱為丹尼羅的區域（許多當地地名，如如格里姆斯比和斯肯索普，都源於維京語）。定居的維京人混入了當地社區，更有些轉成為基督徒。

除丹麥國王朝的短時間內，盎格魯撒克遜歷代國王一直繼續統治部分英國（現在英格蘭領土）。其中第一個便是努特，也稱為克努特。

在北方，海盜的威脅曾使人們團結效忠於一個國王 - 肯尼斯麥艾分，蘇格蘭亦開始用此來描述該國。

### 3.1.4 The Norman Conquest

In 1066, an invasion led by William, the Duke of Normandy (in what is now northern France), defeated Harold, the Saxon king of England, at the Battle of Hastings. Harold was killed in the battle. William became king of England and is known as William the Conqueror. The battle is commemorated in a great piece of embroidery, known as the Bayeux Tapestry, which can still be seen in France today.



Part of the **Bayeux Tapestry** – the linen cloth is nearly 70 metres (230 feet) and is embroidered with coloured wool

The Norman Conquest was the last successful foreign invasion of England and led to many changes in government and social structures in England. Norman French, the language of the new ruling class, influenced the development of the English language as we know it today. Initially the Normans also conquered Wales, but the Welsh gradually won territory back. The Scots and the Normans fought on the border between England and Scotland; the Normans took over some land on the border but did not invade Scotland.

William sent people all over England to draw up lists of all the towns and villages. The people who lived there, who owned the land and what animals they owned were also listed. This was called the Domesday Book. It still exists today and gives a picture of society in England just after the Norman Conquest.

#### Check that you understand:

- The history of the UK before the Romans
- The impact of the Romans on British society
- The different groups that invaded after the Romans
- The importance of the Norman invasion in 1066

### 3.1.4 諾曼人的入侵

1066 年，由諾曼底（在現在的法國北部）公爵威廉帶領的軍隊在在黑斯廷斯戰役擊敗英國撒克遜國王哈羅德並將其殺害。威廉成為英國國王，被稱為征服者威廉。這戰事被錄於一塊稱為貝葉掛毯的巨型刺繡，至今仍能在法國看到。

貝葉掛毯的一部分 - 此亞麻布近 70 米 (230 英尺)，並繡有彩色的羊毛

諾曼人是最後一個能成功入侵英格蘭的外國入侵者，並導致了許多英格蘭政府和社會結構變化。新的統治階級的語言諾曼法語影響了現代英語的發展。最初，諾曼人也征服了威爾士，但是威爾士逐漸把領地奪回。蘇格蘭人和諾曼在英格蘭和蘇格蘭之間的邊界交戰；諾曼奪取了一些領地但沒帶入蘇格蘭。

威廉派人走遍全英國以列出所有的城鎮和村莊。住在這裡的人，地主及他們擁有的動物都被列入書中。這被稱為末日審判書。它今天仍然存在並展示了英國被諾曼人征服之後的境象。

#### Check that you understand

- 羅馬人來到前英國的歷史
- 羅馬人對英國社會的影響
- 羅馬人入侵後侵入不同的入侵者
- 1066 年諾曼人入侵的重要性

## 3.2 The Middle Ages

### 3.2.1 War at home and abroad

The period after the Norman Conquest up until about 1485 is called the Middle Ages (or the medieval period). It was a time of almost constant war.

The English kings fought with the Welsh, Scottish and Irish noblemen for control of their lands. In Wales, the English were able to establish their rule. In 1284 King Edward I of England introduced the Statute of Rhuddlan, which annexed Wales to the Crown of England. Huge castles, including Conwy and Caernarvon, were built to maintain this power. By the middle of the 15th century the last Welsh rebellions had been defeated. English laws and the English language were introduced.

In Scotland, the English kings were less successful. In 1314 the Scottish, led by Robert the Bruce, defeated the English at the Battle of Bannockburn, and Scotland remained unconquered by the English.

At the beginning of the Middle Ages, Ireland was an independent country. The English first went to Ireland as troops to help the Irish king and remained to build their own settlements. By 1200, the English ruled an area of Ireland known as the Pale, around Dublin. Some of the important lords in other parts of Ireland accepted the authority of the English king.

During the Middle Ages, the English kings also fought a number of wars abroad. Many knights took part in the Crusades, in which European Christians fought for control of the Holy Land. English kings also fought a long war with France, called the Hundred Years War (even though it actually lasted 116 years). One of the most famous battles of the Hundred Years War was the Battle of Agincourt in 1415, where King Henry V's vastly outnumbered English army defeated the French. The English left France in the 1450s.

### 3.2.2 The Black Death

The Normans used a system of land ownership known as feudalism. The king gave land to his lords in return for help in war. Landowners had to send certain numbers of men to serve in the army. Some peasants had their own land but most were serfs.

They had a small area of their lord's land where they could grow food. In return, they had to work for their lord and could not move away. The same system developed in southern Scotland. In the north of Scotland and Ireland, land was owned by members of the 'clans' (prominent families).

## 3.2 The Middle Ages

### 3.2.1 國內國外的戰爭

諾曼人入侵後的時期直到約 1485 年被稱為中世紀 (或中世紀時期)。這是長期戰亂的時期。

英國國王為了土地的控制權和威爾士、蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭貴族交戰。在威爾士，英國能夠建立自己的統治。1284 年英格蘭國王愛德華一世引入了羅德蘭法令，把威爾士收入英國領土。他興建康威和卡那封等巨大的城堡以維持這統治勢力。到了 15 世紀中葉的最後的威爾士叛亂都被擊敗了。英國法律和英語進行得以抬頭。

在蘇格蘭，英國國王不太成功。在 1314 年蘇格蘭由羅伯特布魯斯有領，在班諾克本之戰打敗了英國人，之後英國再沒有入侵蘇格蘭。

在中世紀初，愛爾蘭是一個獨立的國家。英國先派軍隊到愛爾蘭以幫助愛爾蘭國王，及建立自己的定居點。約於 1200 年，英國統治了一個在都柏林附近名為佩爾的愛爾蘭地區。一些在愛爾蘭其他地區的重要領主接受了英國國王的權威。

在中世紀，英國國王也進行了一些國外的戰爭。許多騎士參加十字軍東征 (在歐洲的基督徒爭取聖地的控制權)。英國國王也與法國打了一場長期的戰爭，被稱為百年戰爭 (儘管它實際上持續了 116 年)。百年戰爭中最著名的戰役是 1415 年的阿金庫爾戰役 - 國王亨利五世以大批軍隊打敗寡不敵眾的法國軍。英國在 1450 - 60 年離開法國。

### 3.2.2 鼠疫

諾曼人使用封建主義為土地所有權制度。國王授予土地給領主以換取戰爭援助。地主不得不一定數目工人來當兵。一些農民有自己的土地但大部分是農奴。他們可用領主的土地來種植糧食。作為回報，他們要為領主工作，不能搬走。在蘇格蘭南部的帶著同一個制度。在蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭北部，土地是望族的成員所擁有。

In 1348, a disease, probably a form of plague, came to Britain. This was known as the Black Death. One third of the population of England died and a similar proportion in Scotland and Wales. This was one of the worst disasters ever to strike Britain. Following the Black Death, the smaller population meant there was less need to grow cereal crops. There were labour shortages and peasants began to demand higher wages. New social classes appeared, including owners of large areas of land (later called the gentry), and people left the countryside to live in the towns. In the towns, growing wealth led to the development of a strong middle class.

In Ireland, the Black Death killed many in the Pale and, for a time, the area controlled by the English became smaller.

### 3.2.3 Legal and political changes

In the Middle Ages, Parliament began to develop into the institution it is today. Its origins can be traced to the king's council of advisers, which included important noblemen and the leaders of the Church.

There were few formal limits to the king's power until 1215. In that year, King John was forced by his noblemen to agree to a number of demands. The result was a charter of rights called the Magna Carta (which means the Great Charter). The Magna Carta established the idea that even the king was subject to the law. It protected the rights of the nobility and restricted the king's power to collect taxes or to make or change laws. In future, the king would need to involve his noblemen in decisions.

In England, parliaments were called for the king to consult his nobles, particularly when the king needed to raise money. The numbers attending Parliament increased and two separate parts, known as Houses, were established. The nobility, great landowners and bishops sat in the House of Lords. Knights, who were usually smaller landowners, and wealthy people from towns and cities were elected to sit in the House of Commons. Only a small part of the population was able to join in electing the members of the Commons.

A similar Parliament developed in Scotland. It had three Houses, called Estates: the lords, the commons and the clergy.

This was also a time of development in the legal system. The principle that judges are independent of the government began to be established. In England, judges developed 'common law' by a process of precedence (that is, following previous decisions) and tradition. In Scotland, the legal system developed slightly differently and laws were 'codified' (that is, written down).

1348 年，一種疾病，瘟疫來到英國。這被稱為黑死病。英國人口的三分之一死亡，類似的比例也發生在蘇格蘭和威爾士。這是英國史上最糟糕的災難之一。黑死病爆發後，較小的人口意味著有需要較穀類作物。這時勞動力短缺，農民開始要求更高的工資。新的社會階層浮現了，其中包括擁有大面積的土地的地主（後來被稱為紳士）的出現，及人們離開農村搬到城鎮。在城鎮，財富增長形成了一個強大的中產階級勢力。

在愛爾蘭，黑死病殺死了許多佩爾的人。一時之間，英國人控制的區域變小了。

### 3.2.3 法律和政治變革

在中世紀，國會開始發展成今天的模樣。它的起源就是當時國王的謀士，成員包括重要的貴族和教會的領袖。

1215 年前沒有明確約章限制國王的權力。在這一年，約翰王受到貴族壓力下被迫同意一些條件。一個名為大憲章的權利章程因此而成。大憲章確立了使國王是受法律的新約。它保護了貴族的權利和限制了國王收稅或改變法律的權力。此後，國王將需要諮詢及通貴族認可方可立決定。

在英國，議會是為國王徵詢他的貴族而設，特別是國王需要籌集資金時。參加議會的人數漸漸增加，形成兩個獨立的派別。貴族，大地主和主教屬於上議院。一般是小地主的騎士，城市的有錢的人則被納入下議院。只有一小部分人能夠參加選舉推選大眾派成員。

蘇格蘭也發展出近似議會。它一共有三派：上議院，下議院，及神職人員。

這也是發展的法律制度的時候。法官是獨立於政府這原則慢慢建立起來。在英國，法官以過往判例及傳統發展出“普通法”。在蘇格蘭，法律制度發展略有不同，法律是“編纂”（即寫下來）。

### 3.2.4 A distinct identity

The Middle Ages saw the development of a national culture and identity. After the Norman Conquest, the king and his noblemen had spoken Norman French and the peasants had continued to speak Anglo-Saxon. Gradually these two languages combined to become one English language. Some words in modern English – for example, ‘park’ and ‘beauty’ – are based on Norman French words. Others – for example, ‘apple’, ‘cow’ and ‘summer’ – are based on Anglo-Saxon words. In modern English there are often words with very similar meanings, one from French and one from Anglo-Saxon. ‘Demand’ (French) and ‘ask’ (Anglo-Saxon) are examples. By 1400, in England, official documents were being written in English, and English had become the preferred language of the royal court and Parliament.

In the years leading up to 1400, Geoffrey Chaucer wrote a series of poems in English about a group of people going to Canterbury on a pilgrimage. The people decided to tell each other stories on the journey, and the poems describe the travellers and some of the stories they told. This collection of poems is called The Canterbury Tales. It was one of the first books to be printed by William Caxton, the first person in England to print books using a printing press. Many of the stories are still popular. Some have been made into plays and television programmes.

In Scotland, many people continued to speak Gaelic and the Scots language also developed. A number of poets began to write in the Scots language. One example is John Barbour, who wrote The Bruce about the Battle of Bannockburn.

The Middle Ages also saw a change in the type of buildings in Britain. Castles were built in many places in Britain and Ireland, partly for defence. Today many are in ruins, although some, such as Windsor and Edinburgh, are still in use. Great cathedrals – for example, Lincoln Cathedral – were also built, and many of these are still used for worship. Several of the cathedrals had windows of stained glass, telling stories about the Bible and Christian saints. The glass in York Minster is a famous example.

During this period, England was an important trading nation. English wool became a very important export. People came to England from abroad to trade and also to work. Many had special skills, such as weavers from France, engineers from Germany, glass manufacturers from Italy and canal builders from Holland.



York Minster Stained Glass

### 3.2.4 與別不同的身份

中世紀見證了一個民族的文化和身份的發展。諾曼人征服後，國王和他的貴族使用諾曼法語，而農民卻繼續使用盎格魯撒克遜語。漸漸地這兩種語言結合起來，成為統一的英語。在現代英語中有些詞 – 例如，‘公園’和‘美’ – 是基於諾曼法語單詞。其他，例如‘蘋果’，‘牛’和‘夏’則是基於盎格魯撒克遜語。在現代英語中通常有兩個含義非常相似的詞，一個來自法國，一個來自盎格魯撒克遜。‘需求’（法文），‘問’（盎格魯撒克遜）就是例子。到了 1400 年，在英國官方文件已使用英文書寫，英語也已經成為王室和議會的首選語言。

1400 年前，杰弗裡·喬叟寫了一系列英文詩歌講述了一群人去坎特伯雷朝聖。詩歌描述一些他們的故事及遊歷。詩集被稱為坎特伯雷故事集。它是威廉·卡克斯頓的第一本書之一，而他也是第一個在英使用印刷機來印刷書籍的人。許多故事仍然很受歡迎，有些更被製作成戲劇和電視節目。在蘇格蘭，很多人繼續講蓋爾語，同時蘇格蘭語也開始成熟。一些詩人開始以蘇格蘭語寫詩。其中例子是約翰·巴伯 - 描述班諾克本之戰的布魯斯的作者。

英國建築物的類型也在中世紀開始變化。在英國和愛爾蘭許多地方也起了城堡，部分用於防禦。今天，許多已成廢墟，但亦有一些如溫莎和愛丁堡一直沿用至今。很多大教堂例如林肯大教堂也被建立其中許多還是用於敬神。數個大教堂設有彩色玻璃窗戶，講述了聖經和基督教聖徒的故事。在約克大教堂的玻璃就是一個著名的例子。

在此期間，英國是一個重要的貿易國。英國羊毛成為了一個非常重要的出口。人們來到英格蘭從事海外貿易及工作。許多也有特殊技能，如來自法國的織工，來自德國的工程師，意大利玻璃製造商和荷蘭的運河建設者。

約克大教堂彩繪玻璃

### 3.2.5 The Wars of the Roses

In 1455, a civil war was begun to decide who should be king of England. It was fought between the supporters of two families: the House of Lancaster and the House of York. This war was called the Wars of the Roses, because the symbol of Lancaster was a red rose and the symbol of York was a white rose. The war ended with the Battle of Bosworth Field in 1485. King Richard III of the House of York was killed in the battle and Henry Tudor, the leader of the House of Lancaster, became King Henry VII. Henry then married King Richard's niece, Elizabeth of York, and united the two families. Henry was the first king of the House of Tudor. The symbol of the House of Tudor was a red rose with a white rose inside it as a sign that the Houses of York and Lancaster were now allies.

#### Check that you understand

- The wars that took place in the Middle Ages
- How Parliament began to develop
- The way that land ownership worked
- The effect of the Black Death
- The development of English language and culture
- The Wars of the Roses and the founding of the House of Tudor

### 3.2.5 玫瑰戰爭

1455 年，內戰已續漸確立誰是英格蘭國王。這是蘭開斯特黨及約克黨兩派的戰爭。這場戰爭被稱為玫瑰戰爭，因為蘭開斯特的標誌是一朵紅玫瑰而約克的標誌是一朵白玫瑰。戰事隨博斯沃思場戰爭 1485 年之末而結束。約克家族的國王理查德三世戰死，而蘭開斯特的眾議院的領袖亨利·都鐸則成為國王亨利七世。亨利然迎娶理查德國王的侄女，約克的伊麗莎白，及團結兩個家庭。亨利是都鐸王朝的首位國王。都鐸家族的象徵：紅玫瑰內一朵白玫瑰，以證約克和蘭開斯現在是盟友。

#### Check that you understand

- 發生在中世紀的戰爭
- 國會的發展
- 土地推有權的方式
- 黑死病的影響
- 英語語言和文化的發展
- 玫瑰的戰爭和都鐸之家成立

## 3.3 The Tudors and Stuarts

### 3.3.1 Religious conflicts

After his victory in the Wars of the Roses, Henry VII wanted to make sure that England remained peaceful and that his position as king was secure. He deliberately strengthened the central administration of England and reduced the power of the nobles. He was thrifty and built up the monarchy's financial reserves. When he died, his son Henry VIII continued the policy of centralising power.

#### King Henry VII

Henry VIII was most famous for breaking away from the Church of Rome and marrying six times.



Henry VIII was king of England from 21 April 1509 until his death on 28 January 1547

## 3.3 都鐸和斯圖亞特王朝

### 3.3.1 宗教衝突

玫瑰戰爭勝利後，亨利七世要確保英國保持和平及保障他的王。他刻意加強了英格蘭的中央管理和降低了貴族的權力。他很節儉，並建立了強健的君主國財政儲備。當他死後，他的兒子亨利八世繼續採取中央集權政策。

#### 亨利八世

亨利八世是最有名的事蹟是跟羅馬教會決裂和曾結婚六次。

從 1509 年 4 月 21 日直到他於 1547 年 1 月 28 日去世，亨利八世是期間英格蘭國王。

## The six wives of Henry VIII

**Catherine of Aragon** – Catherine was a Spanish princess. She and Henry had a number of children but only one, Mary, survived. When Catherine was too old to give him another child, Henry decided to divorce her, hoping that another wife would give him a son to be his heir.

**Anne Boleyn** – Anne Boleyn was English. She and Henry had one daughter, Elizabeth. Anne was unpopular in the country and was accused of taking lovers. She was executed at the Tower of London.

**Jane Seymour** – Henry married Jane after Anne's execution. She gave Henry the son he wanted, Edward, but she died shortly after the birth.

**Anne of Cleves** – Anne was a German princess. Henry married her for political reasons but divorced her soon after.

**Catherine Howard** – Catherine was a cousin of Anne Boleyn. She was also accused of taking lovers and executed.

**Catherine Parr** – Catherine was a widow who married Henry late in his life. She survived him and married again but died soon after.

To divorce his first wife, Henry needed the approval of the Pope. When the Pope refused, Henry established the Church of England. In this new Church, the king, not the Pope, would have the power to appoint bishops and order how people should worship.

At the same time the Reformation was happening across Europe. This was a movement against the authority of the Pope and the ideas and practices of the Roman Catholic Church. The Protestants formed their own churches. They read the Bible in their own languages instead of in Latin; they did not pray to saints or at shrines; and they believed that a person's own relationship with God was more important than submitting to the authority of the Church. Protestant ideas gradually gained strength in England, Wales and Scotland during the 16th century.

In Ireland, however, attempts by the English to impose Protestantism (alongside efforts to introduce the English system of laws about the inheritance of land) led to rebellion from the Irish chieftains, and much brutal fighting followed.

During the reign of Henry VIII, Wales became formally united with England by the Act for the Government of Wales. The Welsh sent representatives to the House of Commons and the Welsh legal system was reformed.

Henry VIII was succeeded by his son Edward VI, who was strongly Protestant. During his reign, the Book of Common Prayer was written to be used in the Church of England. A version of this book is still used in some churches today. Edward died at the age of 15 after ruling for just over six years, and his half-sister Mary became queen. Mary was a devout Catholic and persecuted Protestants (for this reason, she became known as 'Bloody Mary'). Mary also died after a short reign and the next monarch was her half-sister, Elizabeth, the daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn.

## 亨利八世的六任妻子

- 阿拉貢的凱瑟琳：凱瑟琳是西班牙公主。她和亨利有數個孩子卻·只有一個·瑪麗·倖免於難。當凱瑟琳年紀漸大不能再生育·亨利決定和她離婚·希望另一個妻子會給他生一個兒子為他的繼承人
- 安妮·博林：安妮·博林是英人。她和亨利有一個女兒·伊麗莎白。安妮是在國家不受歡·及後被控與他人通姦。她在倫敦塔被處決。
- 珍·西摩 – 安妮被處決後·亨利娶了珍。她為亨利誕下他想要的兒子·愛德華·但她生育後不久死亡。
- 克利夫斯的安妮 – 安妮是德國公主。亨利娶了她出於政治原因·但不久後便與她離婚。
- 凱瑟琳·霍華德 – 凱瑟琳是安妮·博林的表親。她也被指控與他人通姦及被處決。
- 凱瑟琳·帕爾 – 凱瑟琳在亨利晚年時嫁給他。她在亨利死後成為寡婦·但不久後也去世了。

亨利需要教皇的批准方可與第一任妻子離婚。當教皇拒絕了·亨利成立英國教會。在這個新的教會·國王取代教皇成為任命主教及決定崇拜方式的人。

與此同時歐洲發生宗教改革。這是反對教皇權威和羅馬天主教會的運動。新教徒組成他們自己的教會。他們不是閱讀拉丁文聖經以自己的語言寫成的版本們不崇拜聖人或神龕他們認為·一個人自己與神的關係比服從教會的權威更重要。在 16 世紀·新教理念逐漸在英格蘭·威爾士和蘇格蘭獲得肯定。

但是在愛爾蘭·英人試圖強行引入新教(及英國土地繼承法)引致愛爾蘭酋長叛亂·許多殘酷的戰鬥緊隨其後。

在亨利八世統治時期·威爾士因威爾士政府法案正式與英國統一。威爾士派代表到議院並改革威爾士的法律制。

接替亨利八世是他的兒子愛德華六世·他也是忠誠的新教徒。在他統治期間·公禱書是為英國教會中使用所寫。這本書在某教會一直沿用到今天。愛德華在執政短短六年之後去世·死時 15 歲時·他的同父異母的妹妹瑪麗成為了女王。瑪麗是一個虔誠的天主教徒而一直迫害新教徒(因為這個原因·她被稱為“血腥瑪麗”)。瑪麗也在一個短暫的統治後死去·下一任君主是她同父異母的妹妹·伊麗莎白·亨利八世與安妮·博林的女兒。



## Queen Elizabeth I



*Elizabeth I was the younger daughter of Henry VIII*

Queen Elizabeth I was a Protestant. She re-established the Church of England as the official Church in England. Everyone had to attend their local church and there were laws about the type of religious services and the prayers which could be said, but Elizabeth did not ask about people's real beliefs. She succeeded in finding a balance between the views of Catholics and the more extreme Protestants. In this way, she avoided any serious religious conflict within England. Elizabeth became one of the most popular monarchs in English history, particularly after 1588, when the English defeated the Spanish Armada (a large fleet of ships), which had been sent by Spain to conquer England and restore Catholicism.

### 3.3.2 The Reformation in Scotland and Mary, Queen of Scots

Scotland had also been strongly influenced by Protestant ideas. In 1560, the predominantly Protestant Scottish Parliament abolished the authority of the Pope in Scotland and Roman Catholic religious services became illegal. A Protestant Church of Scotland with an elected leadership was established but, unlike in England, this was not a state Church.

The queen of Scotland, Mary Stuart (often now called 'Mary, Queen of Scots') was a Catholic. She was only a week old when her father died and she became queen. Much of her childhood was spent in France. When she returned to Scotland, she was the centre of a power struggle between different groups. When her husband was murdered, Mary was suspected of involvement and fled to England. She gave her throne to her Protestant son, James VI of Scotland. Mary was Elizabeth I's cousin and hoped that Elizabeth might help her, but Elizabeth suspected Mary of wanting to take over the English throne, and kept her a prisoner for 20 years. Mary was eventually executed, accused of plotting against Elizabeth I.

## 伊麗莎白一世

*伊麗莎白一世是亨利八世的較小的女兒*

伊麗莎白女王一世是新教教徒。她重立英國教會為官方教會。每個人都必須加入當地教會，關於宗教服務類型和祈禱的法律也出現了。但伊麗莎白並沒有深究人們真實的信仰。她成功找到天主教徒和更極端的新教徒的觀點之間的平衡。就這樣，她避免了英國國內任何嚴重的宗教衝突。伊麗莎白亦成為英國歷史上最受愛戴的君主之一，特別是 1588 年後英國擊敗了派往英國征服領土和恢復天主教的西班牙艦隊。

### 3.3.2 蘇格蘭和蘇格蘭女皇瑪麗的改革

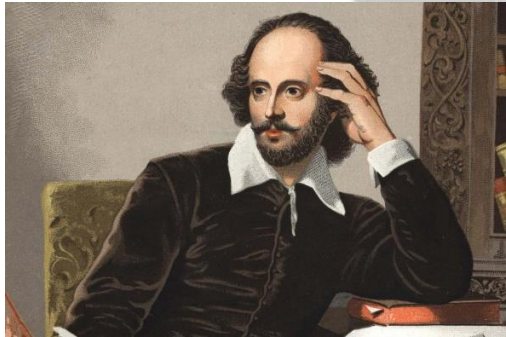
蘇格蘭也受新教思想的強烈影響。在 1560 年，主要是新教徒的蘇格蘭議會，廢除了教皇在蘇格蘭的權力，及令羅馬天主教的宗教儀式成了非法活動。一個民選的領導的蘇格蘭新教教會成立了，但不像在英國般，這不是一個國家教會。

蘇格蘭的女王，瑪麗·斯圖亞特（現在經常被稱為“蘇格蘭女王瑪麗”）是個天主教徒。她的父親在她只有一個星期大時去世，她因而成了皇后。她的童年大部分是在法國度過。當她回到蘇格蘭，她是不同群體之權力鬥爭的中心。當她的丈夫被謀殺，瑪麗被懷疑參與其中因而逃往英格蘭。她把自己的寶座讓給她的新教兒子，蘇格蘭的詹姆士六世。瑪希望表親伊麗莎白會幫她，可是伊麗莎白懷疑瑪麗想要奪取英國王位因此把她囚犯了 20 年。瑪麗最終因謀反伊麗莎白一世的罪名而被處死。

### 3.3.3 Exploration, poetry and drama

The Elizabethan period in England was a time of growing patriotism: a feeling of pride in being English. English explorers sought new trade routes and tried to expand British trade into the Spanish colonies in the Americas. Sir Francis Drake, one of the commanders in the defeat of the Spanish Armada, was one of the founders of England's naval tradition. His ship, the Golden Hind, was one of the first to sail right around ('circumnavigate') the world. In Elizabeth I's time, English settlers first began to colonise the eastern coast of America. This colonisation, particularly by people who disagreed with the religious views of the next two kings, greatly increased in the next century.

The Elizabethan period is also remembered for the richness of its poetry and drama, especially the plays and poems of William Shakespeare.



Shakespeare is widely regarded as the greatest writer in the English language

#### William Shakespeare (1564-1616)

Shakespeare was born in Stratford-upon-Avon, England. He was a playwright and actor and wrote many poems and plays. His most famous plays include *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, *Hamlet*, *Macbeth* and *Romeo and Juliet*. He also dramatised significant events from the past, but he did not focus solely on kings and queens. He was one of the first to portray ordinary Englishmen and women. Shakespeare had a great influence on the English language and invented many words that are still common today. Lines from his plays and poems which are often still quoted include:

- Once more unto the breach (*Henry V*)
- To be or not to be (*Hamlet*)
- A rose by any other name (*Romeo and Juliet*)
- All the world's a stage (*As You Like It*)
- The darling buds of May (*Sonnet 18 – Shall I Compare Thee To a Summer's Day*).

Many people regard Shakespeare as the greatest playwright of all time. His plays and poems are still performed and studied in Britain and other countries today. The Globe Theatre in London is a modern copy of the theatres in which his plays were first performed.

### 3.3.3 考察・詩歌和戲劇

在英國伊麗莎白時期是愛國主義萌芽的時代：人們都為身為英人而自豪。英國探險家尋找新的貿易路線，並試圖擴大英國進入美洲的西班牙殖民地的貿易。擊敗西班牙艦隊指揮官之一的弗朗西斯德雷克爵士，是英國海軍傳統的奠基人之一。他的船金鹿，是第一批走遍（'環繞'）世界的船之一。在伊麗莎白一世的時代，英國定居者最先開始殖民於美洲的東海岸。這種殖民地的開拓，因那些不同意在未來二皇宗教觀點的人而在下一世紀大大增加。

伊麗莎白時期也因詩歌和戲劇的多樣性（特別是莎士比的作品）而聞名。

莎士比亞被廣泛視為英國最偉大的作家

#### 威廉・莎士比亞 (1564 – 1616)

莎士比亞出生於英格蘭埃文河畔斯特拉特福。他是一名劇作家和演員，並寫了許多詩歌和戲劇。最著名的劇作包括一個仲夏夜的夢，哈姆雷特，麥克白和羅密歐與朱麗葉。他還把過去重要事件編成戲劇，但他並沒有只集中於國王和王后。

他是第一個描繪普通英國男人和女性之一。莎士比亞對英語有很大的影響，並創造了許多今天仍然普遍的詞。

他的戲劇和詩歌線經常被引用：

- 再一次對違約行為（亨利五世）
- 是或不是（哈姆雷特）
- 無名玫瑰（羅密歐與朱麗葉）
- 世界是一個階段（如你喜歡）
- 五月花（十四行詩 18 – 要我把你比作夏天的一天）

很多人把莎士比亞作為有史以來最偉大的劇作家。他的戲劇和詩歌至今仍在英國和其他國家公演及被研究修讀。倫敦環球劇院就是他的劇作首次公演的場地的現代版本。

### 3.3.4 James VI and I

Elizabeth I never married and so had no children of her own to inherit her throne. When she died in 1603 her heir was her cousin James VI of Scotland. He became King James I of England, Wales and Ireland but Scotland remained a separate country.

#### The King James Bible

One achievement of King James' reign was a new translation of the Bible into English. This translation is known as the 'King James Version' or the 'Authorised Version'. It was not the first English Bible but is a version which continues to be used in many Protestant churches today.

### 3.3.5 Ireland

During this period, Ireland was an almost completely Catholic country. Henry VII and Henry VIII had extended English control outside the Pale and had established English authority over the whole country. Henry VIII took the title 'King of Ireland'. English laws were introduced and local leaders were expected to follow the instructions of the Lord Lieutenants in Dublin.

During the reigns of Elizabeth I and James I, many people in Ireland opposed rule by the Protestant government in England. There were a number of rebellions. The English government encouraged Scottish and English Protestants to settle in Ulster, the northern province of Ireland, taking over the land from Catholic landholders. These settlements were known as plantations. Many of the new settlers came from south-west Scotland and other land was given to companies based in London. James later organised similar plantations in several other parts of Ireland. This had serious longterm consequences for the history of England, Scotland and Ireland.

### 3.3.6 The rise of Parliament

Elizabeth I was very skilled at managing Parliament. During her reign, she was successful in balancing her wishes and views against those of the House of Lords and those of the House of Commons, which was increasingly Protestant in its views.

James I and his son Charles I were less skilled politically. Both believed in the 'Divine Right of Kings': the idea that the king was directly appointed by God to rule. They thought that the king should be able to act without having to seek approval from Parliament. When Charles I inherited the thrones of England, Wales, Ireland and Scotland, he tried to rule in line with this principle. When he could not get Parliament to agree with his religious and foreign policies, he tried to rule without Parliament at all. For 11 years, he found ways in which to raise money without Parliament's approval but eventually trouble in Scotland meant that he had to recall Parliament.

### 3.3.4 詹姆士六世和一世

伊麗莎白一世從未結婚，所以沒有孩子來繼承她的王位。當於 1603 年死後，她的繼承人是她的表親蘇格蘭的詹姆士六世。他成為英格蘭國王詹姆士一世。除了蘇格蘭外，威爾士和愛爾蘭仍然是個獨立的國家。

#### 國王詹姆斯聖經 (欽定版聖經)

國王詹姆斯統治期間的一個成就，把聖經成新的英文版本。這翻譯本被稱為「欽定版」或「授權版本」。這已經不是第一次英文聖經，但它仍然是許多新教教會今天所使用的版本。

### 3.3.5 愛爾蘭

在此期間，愛爾蘭是一個幾乎完全的天主教國家。亨利七世和亨利八世已擴大佩爾外的統治，並在全國各地設立英國官方組織。亨利八世得了“愛爾蘭國王”稱號。英國法律被引入當地，地方領導人亦要跟隨都柏林總督大人的指示。

在伊麗莎白一世和詹姆士一世的統治間，許多在愛爾蘭的人反對英國新教政府的統治而引發一些叛亂。英國政府鼓勵蘇格蘭和英格蘭的新教徒定居愛爾蘭的北部阿爾斯特，以接管當地從天主教地主之土地。這些定居點被稱為種植園。許多新移民都來自蘇格蘭西南部等地，還有些地分配給總部設在倫敦的公司。詹姆士後來在愛爾蘭等幾個部分組織了類似的種植園。這個政策為英格蘭，蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭的歷史帶來嚴重及持續的後果。

### 3.3.6 議會的崛起

伊麗莎白一世非常善於管理議會。在她統治期間，她成功地平衡了她的願望和觀點，以及那上議院和越來越新教下議院的政見。

詹姆士一世和他的兒子查理一世不太熟練政治。他們都相信君權神授這觀念：國王是由上帝直接委任統治。他們認為國王應該無需於採取行動時尋求國會批准。當查爾斯一世繼承了英格蘭，威爾士，愛爾蘭和蘇格蘭的王位，他試圖以這原則來統治。當他無法得到國會同意他的宗教和外交政策，他嘗試否決議會來統治。十一年來，他用各方式在沒有議會批准下籌集資金，但在蘇格蘭後其的問題意味著他不得不召回議會。

### 3.3.7 The beginning of the English Civil War

Charles I wanted the worship of the Church of England to include more ceremony and introduced a revised Prayer Book. He tried to impose this Prayer Book on the Presbyterian Church in Scotland and this led to serious unrest. A Scottish army was formed and Charles could not find the money he needed for his own army without the help of Parliament. In 1640, he recalled Parliament to ask it for funds. Many in Parliament were Puritans, a group of Protestants who advocated strict and simple religious doctrine and worship. They did not agree with the king's religious views and disliked his reforms of the Church of England. Parliament refused to give the king the money he asked for, even after the Scottish army invaded England.

Another rebellion began in Ireland because the Roman Catholics in Ireland were afraid of the growing power of the Puritans. Parliament took this opportunity to demand control of the English army – a change that would have transferred substantial power from the king to Parliament. In response, Charles I entered the House of Commons and tried to arrest five parliamentary leaders, but they had been warned and were not there. (No monarch has set foot in the Commons since.) Civil war between the king and Parliament could not now be avoided and began in 1642. The country split into those who supported the king (the Cavaliers) and those who supported Parliament (the Roundheads).

### 3.3.8 Oliver Cromwell and the English republic

*Oliver Cromwell was the leader of the English republic*

The king's army was defeated at the Battles of Marston Moor and Naseby. By 1646, it was clear that Parliament had won the war. Charles was held prisoner by the parliamentary army. He was still unwilling to reach any agreement with Parliament and in 1649 he was executed.

England declared itself a republic, called the Commonwealth. It no longer had a monarch. For a time, it was not totally clear how the country would be governed. For now, the army was in control. One of its generals, Oliver Cromwell, was sent to Ireland, where the revolt which had begun in 1641 still continued and where there was still a Royalist army. Cromwell was successful in establishing the authority of the English Parliament but did this with such violence that even today Cromwell remains a controversial figure in Ireland.

The Scots had not agreed to the execution of Charles I and declared his son Charles II to be king. He was crowned king of Scotland and led a Scottish army into England. Cromwell defeated this army in the Battles of Dunbar and Worcester. Charles II escaped from Worcester, famously hiding in an oak tree on one occasion, and eventually fled to Europe. Parliament now controlled Scotland as well as England and Wales.

After his campaign in Ireland and victory over Charles II at Worcester, Cromwell was recognised as the leader of the new republic. He was given the title of Lord Protector and ruled until his death in 1658. When Cromwell died, his son, Richard, became Lord Protector in his place but was not able to control the army or the government. Although Britain had been a republic for 11 years, without Oliver Cromwell there was no clear leader or system of government. Many people in the country wanted stability. People began to talk about the need for a king.

### 3.3.7 英國內戰的開始

查爾斯一世想英格蘭教會崇拜包括更多的儀式，並引入了經修訂的祈禱書。他試圖強加這書予蘇格蘭長老教會，這導致了嚴重的騷亂。一個蘇格蘭反抗軍隊成立了，但查爾斯沒有議會的幫助籌不到他的建軍資。在 1640 年，他重組國會以籌集資金。許多國會成員是清教徒 - 那些主張嚴格和簡單的宗教教義和崇拜的新教徒。他們不同意國王的宗教觀點和不喜歡英格蘭教會的改革。即使在蘇格蘭軍隊入侵英格蘭國會仍舊拒絕批款。

由於在愛爾蘭的羅馬天主教徒害怕清教徒的實力不斷增長，另一個叛亂在愛爾蘭開始。國會藉此機會要求英國軍隊的控制權 – 這改變會把實質權力從國王轉移到議會。對此，查爾斯一世進入下議院並試圖逮捕五名議會領導人，但是他們事先已收到消息，並沒有在那裡（之後再沒有君主自涉足下議院）。最終國王和議會之間的內戰不能避免，於 1642 年正式開始。該國分裂成支持王（騎士）和支持議會（圓顛黨）兩勢力。

### 3.3.8 奧利弗·克倫威爾和共和英國

*奧利弗·克倫威爾是共和英國的領導*

國王軍隊在馬斯頓·摩爾和內斯比戰役被擊敗了。1646 年次前，國會已經明顯贏得了這場戰爭。查爾斯由議會軍隊囚禁。他仍然不願與國會達成任何協議，並在 1649 年被處決。

英國宣布成為共和國，被稱英聯邦。它不再有君主統治。一時間，完全不清楚應該怎樣管轄。就目前而言，軍隊掌控大權。其中一個將軍奧利弗·克倫威爾被送到愛爾蘭。在那裡於 1641 年的起義仍然繼續，那時仍有一個保皇黨軍隊。克倫威爾已成功地建立了英國議會的權威，但他的暴力行為使他至今在愛爾蘭仍然是一個有爭議的人物。

蘇格蘭人並沒有認同處決查爾斯一世，並宣告他的兒子查理二世為國王。他被加冕為蘇格蘭國王，並率領蘇格蘭軍隊進入英國。克倫威爾在鄧巴和伍斯特戰役擊敗了這支軍隊。查理二世從伍斯特逃脫，他有一次藏在一棵橡樹上成為著名事件，並最終逃到了歐洲。現在國會控制了蘇格蘭，以及英格蘭和威爾士。

克倫威爾在愛爾蘭的事蹟及在伍斯特戰勝了查爾斯二世後，被確認為新的共和國的領導者。他被賦予保護者的稱號進行統治，一直到他於 1658 年去世。克倫威爾死後，他的兒子理查德成為保護者但並不能控制軍隊或政府。雖然英國實行共和國 11 年，但沒有克倫威爾的政府沒有明確的領導者或系統。很多國內人們在求穩，開始談論需要一個新國王。

### 3.3.9 The Restoration

In May 1660, Parliament invited Charles II to come back from exile in the Netherlands. He was crowned King Charles II of England, Wales, Scotland and Ireland. Charles II made it clear that he had 'no wish to go on his travels again'. He understood that he could not always do as he wished but would sometimes need to reach agreement with Parliament. Generally, Parliament supported his policies. The Church of England again became the established official Church. Both Roman Catholics and Puritans were kept out of power.

During Charles II's reign, in 1665, there was a major outbreak of plague in London. Thousands of people died, especially in poorer areas. The following year, a great fire destroyed much of the city, including many churches and St Paul's Cathedral. London was rebuilt with a new St Paul's, which was designed by a famous architect, Sir Christopher Wren. Samuel Pepys wrote about these events in a diary which was later published and is still read today.

The Habeas Corpus Act became law in 1679. This was a very important piece of legislation which remains relevant today. Habeas corpus is Latin for 'you must present the person in court'. The Act guaranteed that no one could be held prisoner unlawfully. Every prisoner has a right to a court hearing.

Charles II was interested in science. During his reign, the Royal Society was formed to promote 'natural knowledge'. This is the oldest surviving scientific society in the world. Among its early members were Sir Edmund Halley, who successfully predicted the return of the comet now called Halley's Comet, and Sir Isaac Newton.

#### Isaac Newton (1643–1727)

Born in Lincolnshire, eastern England, Isaac Newton first became interested in science when he studied at Cambridge University. He became an important figure in the field. His most famous published work was *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica* ('Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy'), which showed how gravity applied to the whole universe. Newton also discovered that white light is made up of the colours of the rainbow. Many of his discoveries are still important for modern science.

### 3.3.10 A Catholic king

Charles II had no legitimate children. He died in 1685 and his brother, James, who was a Roman Catholic, became King James II in England, Wales and Ireland and King James VII of Scotland. James favoured Roman Catholics and allowed them to be army Officers, which an Act of Parliament had forbidden. He did not seek to reach agreements with Parliament and arrested some of the bishops of the Church of England. People in England worried that James wanted to make England a Catholic country once more. However, his heirs were his two daughters, who were both firmly Protestant, and people thought that this meant there would soon be a Protestant monarch again. Then, James's wife had a son. Suddenly, it seemed likely that the next monarch would not be a Protestant after all.

### 3.3.9 復辟

在 1660 年 5 月，國會邀請流亡在荷蘭的查爾斯二世回來。他被加冕為英格蘭、威爾士、蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭國王查爾斯二世。查理二世明確表示，他不再被放逐。他明白，他不能總是做如他所願，有時總需要與國會達成一致。一般而言，國會支持他的政策。英國教會再次成為既定官方教會。羅馬天主教徒和清教徒因而失勢。

在 1665 年查爾斯二世統治期間，倫敦爆發了瘟疫。成千上萬的人死亡，在貧困地區尤其慘烈。次年，一場大火毀壞了許多城市，包括許多教堂和聖保羅大教堂。倫敦重建時起了一個新的聖保羅教堂，由著名建築師克里斯托弗·雷恩爵士設計。塞繆爾·佩皮斯把這些事件寫進日記中，及後發行出版，至今仍在傳閱

人身保護法於 1679 年成為法律。這是一個非常重要的立法，今天仍然有效。人身保護令是拉丁語“你必須在法庭上審理此人”。該法保證，沒有人可以被非法囚禁。每個囚犯都有法庭聽證的權利。

查理二世對科學感興趣。他在位期間，英國皇家學會成立以促進“自然知識”。這是世界上現存最古老的科學學會。在它的早期成員包括成功地預測了現在被稱為哈雷彗星彗星回歸的埃德蒙·哈雷爵士，和艾薩克·牛頓爵士。

#### 艾薩克·牛頓爵士 (1643 – 1727)

生於林肯郡，英格蘭東部，艾薩克·牛頓就讀於劍橋大學時開始對科學產生興趣。他成為在該領域的重要人物。他最著名的出版工作是自然哲學的數學原理，這指出重力如何應用到整個宇宙。牛頓還發現白光是由彩虹的顏色而成。他的許多發現都對現代科學都極其重要。

### 3.3.10 天主教國王

查理二世沒有婚生子女。他在 1685 年死後，他的羅馬天主教徒弟弟詹姆斯成為英格蘭、威爾士和愛爾蘭國王詹姆斯二世及蘇格蘭國王詹姆斯七世。詹姆斯青睞羅馬天主教徒，並打破議會法案禁令讓他們成為軍官。他沒有尋求與國會達成協議，又逮捕了一些英國教會的主教。在英格蘭人們擔心，詹姆斯想讓英國再次成為天主教國家。然而，他的繼承人，兩個女兒都是堅定的新教徒，人們認為這意味著一個新教君主將很快出現。然後，詹姆斯的妻子生了一個兒子。似乎有可能，下任君主最終不會是新教徒。

### 3.3.11 the Glorious Revolution

James II's elder daughter, Mary, was married to her cousin William of Orange, the Protestant ruler of the Netherlands. In 1688, important Protestants in England asked William to invade England and proclaim himself king. When William reached England, there was no resistance. James fled to France and William took over the throne, becoming William III in England, Wales and Ireland, and William II of Scotland. William ruled jointly with Mary. This event was later called the 'Glorious Revolution' because there was no fighting in England and because it guaranteed the power of Parliament, ending the threat of a monarch ruling on his or her own as he or she wished. James II wanted to regain the throne and invaded Ireland with the help of a French army. William defeated James II at the Battle of the Boyne in Ireland in 1690, an event which is still celebrated by some in Northern Ireland today. William re-conquered Ireland and James fled back to France. Many restrictions were placed on the Roman Catholic Church in Ireland and Irish Catholics were unable to take part in the government.

There was also support for James in Scotland. An attempt at an armed rebellion in support of James was quickly defeated at Killiecrankie. All Scottish clans were required formally to accept William as king by taking an oath. The MacDonalds of Glencoe were late in taking the oath and were all killed. The memory of this massacre meant some Scots distrusted the new government.

Some continued to believe that James was the rightful king, particularly in Scotland. Some joined him in exile in France; others were secret supporters. James' supporters became known as Jacobites.

#### Check that you understand

- How and why religion changed during this period
- The importance of poetry and drama in the Elizabethan period
- About the involvement of Britain in Ireland
- The development of Parliament and the only period in history when England was a republic
- Why there was a restoration of the monarchy
- How the Glorious Revolution happened

### 3.3.11 光榮革命

詹姆斯二世的長女瑪麗嫁給了她的表哥，荷蘭新教統治者威廉。1688年，在英國的新教要員提出要求威廉入侵英國，並請他自立為王。威廉到達英國時沒有阻力。詹姆斯逃往法國而威廉則接過王位，成為英格蘭、威爾士和愛爾蘭的威廉三世和蘇格蘭的威廉二世。威廉與瑪麗共同統治。此事件後來被稱為“光榮革命”，原因是在英格蘭沒有戰鬥發生，亦如他所願這保證議會的權力，結束了君主統治對他兩的威脅。

在法國軍隊的幫助下詹姆斯二世入侵愛爾蘭希望奪回王位。在1690年威廉於愛爾蘭博因之戰擊敗了詹姆斯二世，北愛爾蘭至今仍然有慶祝這事件。威廉重新征服了愛爾蘭，詹姆斯則逃回法國。諸多放置在愛爾蘭羅馬天主教會的限制產生了，愛爾蘭天主教徒也無法加入政府。

詹姆斯在蘇格蘭還有擁護者。支持詹姆斯的武裝叛亂很快在基利克蘭基被擊敗了。所有蘇格蘭家族須要宣誓正式接受威廉為王。倫科的麥當勞家族都在宣誓時晚了結果全部被殺。這次大屠殺的記憶意味著一些蘇格蘭人不信任新政府。

一些人仍然認為詹姆斯是合法的國王，特別是在蘇格蘭。一些加入了他流亡法國其他人是秘密支持者。詹姆斯的支持者被稱為詹姆斯黨。

#### Check that you understand

- 在此期間宗教改變的方式和原因
- 伊麗莎白時期詩歌和戲劇的重要性
- 關於英國在愛爾蘭的行動
- 議會的發展和英國歷史上唯一的共和國時期
- 帝制為什麼有復辟
- 光榮革命如何發生

## 3.4 A Global Power

### 3.4.1 Constitutional monarchy — the Bill of Rights

At the coronation of William and Mary, a Declaration of Rights was read. This confirmed that the king would no longer be able to raise taxes or administer justice without agreement from Parliament. The balance of power between monarch and Parliament had now permanently changed. The Bill of Rights, 1689, confirmed the rights of Parliament and the limits of the king's power. Parliament took control of who could be monarch and declared that the king or queen must be a Protestant. A new Parliament had to be elected at least every three years (later this became seven years and now it is five years). Every year the monarch had to ask Parliament to renew funding for the army and the navy.

These changes meant that, to be able to govern effectively, the monarch needed to have advisers, or ministers, who would be able to ensure a majority of votes in the House of Commons and the House of Lords. There were two main groups in Parliament, known as the Whigs and the Tories. (The modern Conservative Party is still sometimes referred to as the Tories.) This was the beginning of party politics.

This was also an important time for the development of a free press (newspapers and other publications which are not controlled by the government). From 1695, newspapers were allowed to operate without a government licence. Increasing numbers of newspapers began to be published.

The laws passed after the Glorious Revolution are the beginning of what is called 'constitutional monarchy'. The monarch remained very important but was no longer able to insist on particular policies or actions if Parliament did not agree. After William III, the ministers gradually became more important than the monarch but this was not a democracy in the modern sense. The number of people who had the right to vote for members of Parliament was still very small. Only men who owned property of a certain value were able to vote. No women at all had the vote. Some constituencies were controlled by a single wealthy family. These were called 'pocket boroughs'. Other constituencies had hardly any voters and were called 'rotten boroughs'.

## 3.4 全球勢力

### 3.4.1 君主立憲制 – 人權法案

威廉和瑪麗加冕當天，人權宣言被讀取了。這引證了國王將不能未經國會同意下提高稅收或執行司法。君主和議會之間的權力平衡現在已永久地改變了。1689 的權利法案，確認國會的權利及限制國王的權力。國會掌控了推選君主的控制權和宣布國王或女王必須是新教徒。

最多每三年便會有新選出的議會（後來這成為七年，現在是五年）。君主每年不得不諮詢國會以延長的陸軍和海軍撥款。

這些變化意味著，要有效執政，君主需要有能夠保證在下議院和上議院的眾議院過半數票的顧問，或部長。有在議會兩大派，被稱為輝格黨和托利黨。（現代保守黨仍然有時被稱為保守黨）。這是政黨政治的開始。

這也是對自由新聞媒體（報紙和其他不受政府控制的出版物）發展的一個重要時期。從 1695 年的報紙都可以以無政府牌照經營。報紙越來越多的開始面世。

光榮革命後通過的法律是所謂“君主立憲制”的開始。君主仍然非常重要，但如果國會不同意已不再能如以往堅持特定的政策或行動。威廉三世後，部長們逐漸變得比君主更重要，但是這並不是現代意義上的民主國家。有權投票選出國會議員的人數仍然很少。只有擁有一定財富的人方能投票。沒有女性擁有投票權。有些選區是由一個單一的富有家族控制。這些被稱為“口袋行政區”。其他選區有幾乎沒有任何選民，被稱為“衰敗選區”。

### 3.4.2 A growing population

This was a time when many people left Britain and Ireland to settle in new colonies in America and elsewhere, but others came to live in Britain. The first Jews to come to Britain since the Middle Ages settled in London in 1656. Between 1680 and 1720 many refugees called Huguenots came from France. They were Protestants and had been persecuted for their religion. Many were educated and skilled and worked as scientists, in banking, or in weaving or other crafts.

### 3.4.3 The Act or Treaty of Union in Scotland



St. Andrew's Cross of Scotland

William and Mary's successor, Queen Anne, had no surviving children. This created uncertainty over the succession in England, Wales and Ireland and in Scotland. The Act of Union, known as the Treaty of Union in Scotland, was therefore agreed in 1707, creating the Kingdom of Great Britain. Although Scotland was no longer an independent country, it kept its own legal and education systems and Presbyterian Church.

### 3.4.2 人口的增長

這是許多人離開英國和愛爾蘭定居在美國和其他地方新殖民地的時期，但同時外來其他人也搬進英國。第一個猶太人自中世紀 1656 年來到英國定居倫敦。1680 和 1720 年間，很多被稱為胡格諾派教徒的難民由法國而來。他們是新教徒，並因他們的宗教而受迫害。許多人曾受教育和有特定技能，能擔任科學家，或在銀行編織或其他工藝品方面工作。



### 3.4.3 蘇格蘭聯盟法案或條約

威廉和瑪麗的接班人，安妮女王，沒有倖存的孩子。這在英格蘭，威爾士和愛爾蘭和蘇格蘭創造了繼承的不確定性。因此，被稱為蘇格蘭聯盟條約的聯盟的法案於 1707 年通過了，成就了大不列顛王國。雖然蘇格蘭不再是一個獨立的國家，但它保留了它自己的法律和教育體系以及長老教會。



### 3.4.4 The Prime Minister

When Queen Anne died in 1714, Parliament chose a German, George I, to be the next king, because he was Anne's nearest Protestant relative. An attempt by Scottish Jacobites to put James II's son on the throne instead was quickly defeated. George I did not speak very good English and this increased his need to rely on his ministers. The most important minister in Parliament became known as the Prime Minister. The first man to be called this was Sir Robert Walpole, who was Prime Minister from 1721 to 1742.

### 3.4.5 The rebellion of the clans

In 1745 there was another attempt to put a Stuart king back on the throne in place of George I's son, George II. Charles Edward Stuart (Bonnie Prince Charlie), the grandson of James II, landed in Scotland. He was supported by clansmen from the Scottish highlands and raised an army. Charles initially had some successes but was defeated by George II's army at the Battle of Culloden in 1746. Charles escaped back to Europe.

The clans lost a lot of their power and influence after Culloden. Chieftains became landlords if they had the favour of the English king, and clansmen became tenants who had to pay for the land they used.

A process began which became known as the 'Highland Clearances'. Many Scottish landlords destroyed individual small farms (known as 'crofts') to make space for large flocks of sheep and cattle. Evictions became very common in the early 19th century. Many Scottish people left for North America at this time.

**Robert Burns (1759–96)** : Known in Scotland as 'The Bard', Robert Burns was a Scottish poet. He wrote in the Scots language, English with some Scottish words, and standard English. He also revised a lot of traditional folk songs by changing or adding lyrics. Burns' best-known work is probably the song *Auld Lang Syne*, which is sung by people in the UK and other countries when they are celebrating the New Year (or Hogmanay as it is called in Scotland).

### 3.4.6 The Enlightenment

During the 18th century, new ideas about politics, philosophy and science were developed. This is often called 'the Enlightenment'. Many of the great thinkers of the Enlightenment were Scottish. Adam Smith developed ideas about economics which are still referred to today. David Hume's ideas about human nature continue to influence philosophers. Scientific discoveries, such as James Watt's work on steam power, helped the progress of the Industrial Revolution. One of the most important principles of the Enlightenment was that everyone should have the right to their own political and religious beliefs and that the state should not try to dictate to them. This continues to be an important principle in the UK today.

### 3.4.4 首相

當安妮女王在 1714 年去世後，議會選擇了安妮最近親的新教徒親屬，德國人喬治一世成為下任國王。蘇格蘭詹姆斯黨企圖把詹姆斯二世的兒子推上王位之計劃很快破滅。喬治一世英語不靈光，這增加了他對他的部長的依賴。在國會中最重要的大臣後來被稱為首相。第一個得此稱號的人是 1721 年至 1742 年就任的首相羅伯特·沃波爾爵士。

### 3.4.5 宗族叛變

在 1745 年，曾有人企圖以斯圖爾特王取代喬治一世的兒子喬治二世為王。詹姆斯二世的孫子查爾斯·愛德華·斯圖爾特（邦尼王子查理）登陸蘇格蘭。他得到蘇格蘭高地氏族的支持及起兵。查爾斯最初有略有勝仗，但在 1746 於卡洛登戰役被喬治二世的軍隊擊敗後逃回歐洲。

蘇格蘭高地氏族在卡洛登後失去了大部分權力和影響力。如果得到英國國王的青睞宗族長可成為業主，同時族人成為租戶，支付金錢以使用土地。

一個被稱為“高地大清洗”的進程，使許多蘇格蘭地主摧毀個別小農場以騰出空間飼養羊和牛群。在 19 世紀很多農場被收回，令許多蘇格蘭人民出走至北美。

羅伯特·彭斯 (1759 – 1796)

在蘇格蘭被稱為“吟遊詩人”，羅伯特·彭斯是蘇格蘭詩人。他以蘇格蘭語（英語加插某些蘇格蘭語）和標準的英語寫詩。他還以改變或添加歌詞修改了很多傳統民歌。伯恩斯最著名的作品應是“地久天長之友誼”，是英國和其他國家人們在慶祝新年（或蘇格蘭除夕夜）時頌唱的歌曲。

### 3.4.6 啟蒙運動

在 18 世紀，政治、哲學和科學的新思路續漸開發。這通常被稱為“啟蒙運動”。許多啟蒙運動的偉大思想家也是蘇格蘭人。亞當·斯密的經濟思想目前仍是影響深遠。大衛·休謨的對人性的見解繼續影響現今的哲學家。如詹姆斯·瓦特對蒸汽動力的研究等科學發現推動了工業革命的進程。其中一個啟蒙運動的最重要的原則是，每個人都應該有自己的政治和宗教信仰的權利，國家不應該試圖支配他們。這重要的原則一直持流行於英國。

### 3.4.7 The Industrial Revolution

Before the 18th century, agriculture was the biggest source of employment in Britain. There were many cottage industries, where people worked from home to produce goods such as cloth and lace.

The Industrial Revolution was the rapid development of industry in Britain in the 18th and 19th centuries. Britain was the first country to industrialise on a large scale. It happened because of the development of machinery and the use of steam power. Agriculture and the manufacturing of goods became mechanised. This made things more efficient and increased production. Coal and other raw materials were needed to power the new factories. Many people moved from the countryside and started working in the mining and manufacturing industries.

The development of the Bessemer process for the mass production of steel led to the development of the shipbuilding industry and the railways. Manufacturing jobs became the main source of employment in Britain.

#### Richard Arkwright (1732–92)



Richard Arkwright's carding machine

Born in 1732, Arkwright originally trained and worked as a barber. He was able to dye hair and make wigs. When wigs became less popular, he started to work in textiles. He improved the original carding machine. Carding is the process of preparing fibres for spinning into yarn and fabric. He also developed horse-driven spinning mills that used only one machine. This increased the efficiency of production. Later, he used the steam engine to power machinery. Arkwright is particularly remembered for the efficient and profitable way that he ran his factories.

Better transport links were needed to transport raw materials and manufactured goods. Canals were built to link the factories to towns and cities and to the ports, particularly in the new industrial areas in the middle and north of England.

Working conditions during the Industrial Revolution were very poor. There were no laws to protect employees, who were often forced to work long hours in dangerous situations. Children also worked and were treated in the same way as adults. Sometimes they were treated even more harshly.

### 3.4.7 工業革命

在 18 世紀以前，農業是在英國就業的最大來源。有許多，很多人們在家裡的村舍廠房工作生產商品，如布和花邊。

工業革命在 18 世紀和 19 世紀在英國迅速發展。英國是第一個大規模工業化的國家。機械和蒸汽動力的發展促成了這改變。農業和商品的生產變得機械化。這使生產變得更加有效率，產量亦隨之增加。煤炭及其他原材料需求增加以為新工廠提供電力。很多人搬離農村並開始在採礦業和製造業工作。

為大規模生產鋼而設的轉爐流程帶動了造船業的和鐵路發展。製造業因而成為英國主要的就業來源在。

#### 理查德·阿克萊特 (1732 – 1792)

阿克萊的梳棉機

生於 1732 年，阿克萊特最初被訓練成理髮師並在這方面工作。他懂染髮和做假髮。當假髮變得不那麼受歡迎，他開始從事紡織業。他改進了原有的梳棉機。梳理法是製備將紡成紗線和織物的纖維的過程。他還開發了只用一台機器，以馬匹驅動的紡紗廠。這大大增加了生產效率。後來，他用蒸汽機為機械提供動力。阿克萊特以他工廠的效率和盈利而著名。

運輸原材料和製成品需要更佳的交通。運河建成後把工廠鏈接到不同城鎮和港口，尤其是在英格蘭中部和北部的新工業區。

工業革命期間的工作環境和條件很差。沒有法律來保護員工，他們往往被迫在危險的情況下長時間工作。童工現象出現，他們的待遇跟成年人一無異。有時他們更會受到更嚴厲的對待。

This was also a time of increased colonisation overseas. Captain James Cook mapped the coast of Australia and a few colonies were established there. Britain gained control over Canada, and the East India Company, originally set up to trade, gained control of large parts of India. Colonies began to be established in southern Africa.

Britain traded all over the world and began to import more goods. Sugar and tobacco came from North America and the West Indies; textiles, tea and spices came from India and the area that is today called Indonesia. Trading and settlements overseas sometimes brought Britain into conflict with other countries, particularly France, which was expanding and trading in a similar way in many of the same areas of the world.

#### **Sake Dean Mahomet (1759–1851)**

Mahomet was born in 1759 and grew up in the Bengal region of India. He served in the Bengal army and came to Britain in 1782. He then moved to Ireland and eloped with an Irish girl called Jane Daly in 1786, returning to England at the turn of the century. In 1810 he opened the Hindoostane Coffee House in George Street, London. It was the first curry house to open in Britain. Mahomet and his wife also introduced 'shampooing', the Indian art of head massage, to Britain.

### 3.4.8 The slave trade

This commercial expansion and prosperity was sustained in part by the booming slave trade. While slavery was illegal within Britain itself, by the 18th century it was a fully established overseas industry, dominated by Britain and the American colonies.

Slaves came primarily from West Africa. Travelling on British ships in horrible conditions, they were taken to America and the Caribbean, where they were made to work on tobacco and sugar plantations. The living and working conditions for slaves were very bad. Many slaves tried to escape and others revolted against their owners in protest at their terrible treatment.

There were, however, people in Britain who opposed the slave trade. The first formal anti-slavery groups were set up by the Quakers in the late 1700s, and they petitioned Parliament to ban the practice. William Wilberforce, an evangelical Christian and a member of Parliament, also played an important part in changing the law. Along with other abolitionists (people who supported the abolition of slavery), he succeeded in turning public opinion against the slave trade. In 1807, it became illegal to trade slaves in British ships or from British ports, and in 1833 the Emancipation Act abolished slavery throughout the British Empire. The Royal Navy stopped slave ships from other countries, freed the slaves and punished the slave traders. After 1833, 2 million Indian and Chinese workers were employed to replace the freed slaves. They worked on sugar plantations in the Caribbean, in mines in South Africa, on railways in East Africa and in the army in Kenya.

有段時期海外殖民增加了。詹姆斯·庫克船長發現澳大利亞海岸並在那建立了一些殖民地。英國獲得了加拿大的控制，而原因貿易所成的東印度公司則獲得了印度大部分地區的控制。殖民地開始被建立在南部非洲。

英國買賣遍布世界各地，並開始進口更多的商品。糖和煙草來自北美和西印度群島紡織品，茶葉和香料來自印度（今天是該地區被稱為印尼）。海外交易及結算有時也為英國與其他國家帶來衝突，尤其是法國，因為法國也正在世界上許多相同區域擴大交易。

#### **索加狄恩·穆罕默德 (1759 – 1851)**

穆罕默德生於 1759 印度的孟加拉地區。他曾參加孟加拉軍隊於 1782 年來到了英國。然後，他搬到了愛爾蘭，並與一個名為簡達利愛爾蘭女孩於 1786 年私奔回到英國。1810 年，他在倫敦喬治街開了印度斯坦咖啡店。它是第一家在英國的咖哩店。穆罕默德和他的妻子還把印度頭部按摩藝術洗頭服務引入英國。

### 3.4.8 販賣奴隸

商業擴張和繁榮部分是由蓬勃的奴隸買賣所撐起。雖然奴隸制在英國本身違法，但到了 18 世紀它已經是一個由英國和美國的殖民統治而具規模的海外生意。

奴隸主要來自西非。他們乘英國船隻（通常船內環境惡劣），被帶到美洲和加勒比地區在那裡的煙草和甘蔗種植園工作。奴隸的生活和工作條件非常糟糕。許多奴隸試圖逃脫，也有因可怕待遇而反抗他們的主人。

不過，也有，英國人反對奴隸貿易。第一個正式的反奴隸制組織在 18 世紀末期由貴格會成立，並訴請國會禁止這種貿易。福音派基督徒和議會的一員，威廉·威爾伯福斯也在改變法律中發揮了重要作用。與其他支持廢除奴隸制主義者合力，他成功運用公眾輿論以反對奴隸貿易。1807 年，在英國船隻或英屬港口貿易的奴隸成為非法，而 1833 年 解放法成功廢除了整個大英帝國的奴隸制。皇家海軍阻截從其他國家來的奴隸船，解放奴隸和懲罰奴隸販子。1833 之後，200 萬印度和中國工人被僱用以取代被釋放的奴隸。他們在加勒比海區域的甘蔗種植園，在南非礦山工作，或在東非搭建鐵路和在肯尼亞參軍。

### 3.4.9 The American War of Independence

By the 1760s, there were substantial British colonies in North America. The colonies were wealthy and largely in control of their own affairs. Many of the colonist families had originally gone to North America in order to have religious freedom. They were well educated and interested in ideas of liberty. The British government wanted to tax the colonies. The colonists saw this as an attack on their freedom and said there should be 'no taxation without representation' in the British Parliament. Parliament tried to compromise by repealing some of the taxes, but relationships between the British government and the colonies continued to worsen. Fighting broke out between the colonists and the British forces. In 1776, 13 American colonies declared their independence, stating that people had a right to establish their own governments. The colonists eventually defeated the British army and Britain recognised the colonies' independence in 1783.

### 3.4.10 War with France

During the 18th century, Britain fought a number of wars with France. In 1789, there was a revolution in France and the new French government soon declared war on Britain. Napoleon, who became Emperor of France, continued the war. Britain's navy fought against combined French and Spanish fleets, winning the Battle of Trafalgar in 1805. Admiral Nelson was in charge of the British fleet at Trafalgar and was killed in the battle. Nelson's Column in Trafalgar Square, London, is a monument to him. His ship, HMS Victory, can be visited in Portsmouth. The British army also fought against the French. In 1815, the French Wars ended with the defeat of the Emperor Napoleon by the Duke of Wellington at the Battle of Waterloo. Wellington was known as the Iron Duke and later became Prime Minister.



*The Battle of Trafalgar (21 October 1805) was a naval engagement fought by the British Royal Navy against the combined fleets of the French Navy and Spanish Navy*

### 3.4.9 美國獨立戰爭

到了 1760 年代，大量英國殖民地在北美地區出現。殖民家庭大多是富有的，也有一定自由控制自己的事務。許多殖民家庭最初是為宗教信仰自由而來到北美。他們受過良好教育和嚮往自由思想。英國政府想要向殖民地徵稅。殖民者認為這侵犯他們的自由，並說“他們在英國議會沒有代表就不應受沒有繳稅”。國會試圖通過廢除一些稅收以妥協，但英國政府和殖民地之間的關係持續惡化。殖民者和英國部隊之間戰事開始。1776 年，美國 13 個殖民地宣布獨立，表明人們有建立自己的政府的權利。殖民者最終打敗了英國軍隊，而英國亦在 1783 年承認殖民地的獨立。

### 3.4.10 與法國之戰爭

在 18 世紀，英國打了多場與法國的戰爭。1789 年，有一個革命在法國開始，而法國新政府也隨即向英國宣戰。成為法國皇帝的拿破崙延續了戰事。英國海軍與法國和西班牙聯合艦隊交戰，於 1805 年贏得特拉法爾加戰役。海軍上將納爾遜在特拉法爾是負責指揮英國艦隊，但在戰鬥中陣亡。在英國倫敦特拉法加廣場的納爾遜紀念柱是紀念他的一座雕像。他的船 HMS 勝利號在朴茨茅斯可以參觀得到。英國陸軍也與法國開戰。在 1815 年，皇帝拿破崙在滑鐵盧之戰被威靈頓公爵打敗後，法國的戰爭結束了。威靈頓被人們稱為鐵公爵，後來成為首相。

特拉法加戰役 ( 1805 年 10 月 21 日 ) 是一個由英國皇家海軍對法國及西班牙海軍聯合艦隊的海上戰鬥。

### 3.4.11 the Union Flag

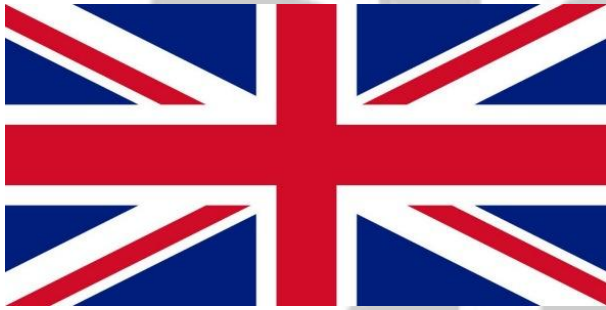
Although Ireland had had the same monarch as England and Wales since Henry VIII, it had remained a separate country. In 1801, Ireland became unified with England, Scotland and Wales after the Act of Union of 1800. This created the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. One symbol of this union between England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland was a new version of the official flag, the Union Flag. This is often called the Union Jack. The flag combined crosses associated with England, Scotland and Ireland. It is still used today as the official flag of the UK.

The Union Flag consists of three crosses:

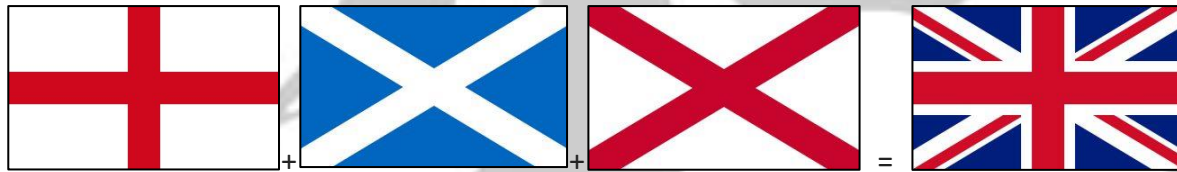
The cross of St George, patron saint of England, is a red cross on a white ground.

The cross of St Andrew, patron saint of Scotland, is a diagonal white cross on a blue ground.

The cross of St Patrick, patron saint of Ireland, is a diagonal red cross on a white ground.



The Union Flag also known as the Union Jack



The crosses of the three countries which combined to form the Union Flag



There is also an official Welsh flag, which shows a Welsh dragon. The Welsh dragon does not appear on the Union Flag because, when the first Union Flag was created in 1606 from the flags of Scotland and England, the Principality of Wales was already united with England.

The official Welsh Flag

### 3.4.11 聯合旗

自亨利八世後，雖然愛爾蘭與英格蘭和威爾士有同樣的君主，但它仍然是一個獨立的國家。1801 年的 1800 年法案通過後，愛爾蘭與英格蘭、蘇格蘭和威爾士統一。這創造了大不列顛和愛爾蘭聯合王國。其中一個印證著英格蘭、蘇格蘭、威爾士和愛爾蘭之間的聯盟的標誌就是新版本的聯盟旗幟。這通常被稱為英國國旗。旗幟結合了英格蘭、蘇格蘭和愛爾蘭標誌的十字。今天它仍作為英國的官方標誌。

該聯盟標誌由三個十字架組成：

白色背景上紅十字架是英格蘭主保聖喬治十字。

藍色背景上對角白十字架是蘇格蘭主保聖安德魯斯十字。

白色背景上對角紅十字架是愛爾蘭主保聖帕特里克十字。

聯合旗(Union Flag) 也被稱為 Union Jack。中文通稱米字旗

三個國家的十字架結合組成聯合旗

此外還有一個官方的威爾士國旗，顯示了威爾士龍。威爾士龍沒有出現在聯盟旗幟，因為當第一個聯盟旗幟在 1606 年由蘇格蘭和英格蘭的旗幟組成時，威爾士公國已經與英國統一。

官方威爾士國旗

### 3.4.12 The Victorian Age

In 1837, Queen Victoria became queen of the UK at the age of 18. She reigned until 1901, almost 64 years. At the date of writing (2013) this is the longest reign of any British monarch. Her reign is known as the Victorian Age. It was a time when Britain increased in power and influence abroad. Within the UK, the middle classes became increasingly significant and a number of reformers led moves to improve conditions of life for the poor.

### 3.4.13 The British Empire

During the Victorian period, the British Empire grew to cover all of India, Australia and large parts of Africa. It became the largest empire the world has ever seen, with an estimated population of more than 400 million people.

Many people were encouraged to leave the UK to settle overseas. Between 1853 and 1913, as many as 13 million British citizens left the country. People continued to come to Britain from other parts of the world. For example, between 1870 and 1914, around 120,000 Russian and Polish Jews came to Britain to escape persecution. Many settled in London's East End and in Manchester and Leeds. People from the Empire, including India and Africa, also came to Britain to live, work and study.

### 3.4.14 Trade and industry

Britain continued to be a great trading nation. The government began to promote policies of free trade, abolishing a number of taxes on imported goods. One example of this was the repealing of the Corn Laws in 1846. These had prevented the import of cheap grain. The reforms helped the development of British industry, because raw materials could now be imported more cheaply.

Working conditions in factories gradually became better. In 1847, the number of hours that women and children could work was limited by law to 10 hours per day. Better housing began to be built for workers.

Transport links also improved, enabling goods and people to move more easily around the country. Just before Victoria came to the throne, the father and son George and Robert Stephenson pioneered the railway engine and a major expansion of the railways took place in the Victorian period. Railways were built throughout the Empire. There were also great advances in other areas, such as the building of bridges by engineers such as Isambard Kingdom Brunel.

### 3.4.12 維多利亞時代

1837 年，維多利亞女王在 18 歲成為英國女王。直到 1901 年，她的統治約 64 年。在寫這篇文章的日期 (2013 年)，她是在位時間最長的英國君主。她的皇朝被稱為維多利亞時代。這是一個英國於國外權力和影響力增長的時候。在英國內，中產階級日益壯大，同時有一批改革者致力改善窮人的生活條件。

### 3.4.13 大英帝國

在維多利亞時期，大英帝國發展覆蓋至整個印度、澳大利亞和非洲的大部分地區的。它成為了世界上有史以來最大的帝國，推算人口有 400 多萬。很多人都受鼓勵離開英國到海外定居。在 1853 年和 1913 年，多達 13 萬英國公民離開該國。同時從世界其他地區的人也繼續來到英國。例如 1870 年到 1914 年間，約 12 萬俄羅斯和波蘭的猶太人來到英國逃避迫害。許多定居在倫敦東區、曼徹斯特和列斯。帝國中的人，包括印度和非洲人也來到了英國的生活、工作和學習。

### 3.4.14 貿易和工業

英國仍然是一個很大的貿易國。政府開始推動自由貿易政策而取消了一些進口稅。1846 年被廢除的穀物法便是一個例子。這阻止廉價穀物進口。原料現在可以以更便宜的價錢進口，這改革有助於英國產業的發展。

工廠工作條件逐漸變好。1847 年，婦女和兒童的工作時數由法律限於每天 10 小時，同時開始為工人建造更好的住房。

運輸環節也有所改善，使貨物和人員更容易於全國各地遊走。就在維多利亞即位前，喬治和他兒子羅伯特·史蒂芬森首創火車發動機，以致維多利亞時期鐵路的重大擴張。鐵路覆蓋整個帝國。其他方面也有的巨大進步，如工程師伊桑巴德·金德姆·布魯內爾建設建成多個橋樑。

### Isambard Kingdom Brunel (1806–59)

Brunel was originally from Portsmouth, England. He was an engineer who built tunnels, bridges, railway lines and ships. He was responsible for constructing the Great Western Railway, which was the first major railway built in Britain. It runs from Paddington Station in London to the south west of England, the West Midlands and Wales. Many of Brunel's bridges are still in use today.



*The Clifton suspension Bridge, designed by Isambard Kingdom Brunel, spanning the Avon Gorge*

British industry led the world in the 19th century. The UK produced more than half of the world's iron, coal and cotton cloth. The UK also became a centre for financial services, including insurance and banking. In 1851, the Great Exhibition opened in Hyde Park in the Crystal Palace, a huge building made of steel and glass. Exhibits ranged from huge machines to handmade goods. Countries from all over the world showed their goods but most of the objects were made in Britain.

伊桑巴德 • 金德姆 • 布魯內爾 (1806 – 1859)

布魯內爾從英國樸次茅斯而來。他是建隧道、橋樑、鐵路和船舶的工程師。他負責建造英國的第一個主要的鐵路 - 大西部鐵路。它在倫敦的帕丁頓車站到英格蘭西南部西米德蘭和威爾士之間運行。許多布魯內爾的橋樑是今天仍然在使用。

由伊桑巴德 • 金德姆 • 布魯內爾設計的布裡斯托吊橋跨越埃文峽谷。

英國產業在 19 世紀為領先世界各地。英國生產了世界一半的鐵、煤和棉布。英國也成為了提供保險業和銀行業等服務的金融服務中心。1851 年，世界博覽會在水晶宮 (用鋼和玻璃建成的大型建築) 海德公園揭幕。展品範圍從龐大的機器以至手工藝品。來自世界各地的國家展出自己的貨物，但大部分展品也是在英國製造。

### 3.4.15 The Crimean War

From 1853 to 1856, Britain fought with Turkey and France against Russia in the Crimean War. It was the first war to be extensively covered by the media through news stories and photographs. The conditions were very poor and many soldiers died from illnesses they caught in the hospitals, rather than from war wounds. Queen Victoria introduced the Victoria Cross medal during this war. It honours acts of valour by soldiers.

#### **Florence Nightingale (1820–1910)**

Florence Nightingale was born in Italy to English parents. At the age of 31, she trained as a nurse in Germany. In 1854, she went to Turkey and worked in military hospitals, treating soldiers who were fighting in the Crimean War. She and her fellow nurses improved the conditions in the hospital and reduced the mortality rate. In 1860 she established the Nightingale Training School for nurses at St Thomas' Hospital in London. The school was the first of its kind and still exists today, as do many of the practices that Florence used. She is often regarded as the founder of modern nursing.

### 3.4.16 Ireland in the 19th century

Conditions in Ireland were not as good as in the rest of the UK. Two-thirds of the population still depended on farming to make their living, often on very small plots of land. Many depended on potatoes as a large part of their diet. In the middle of the century the potato crop failed, and Ireland suffered a famine. A million people died from disease and starvation. Another million and a half left Ireland. Some emigrated to the United States and others came to England. By 1861 there were large populations of Irish people in cities such as Liverpool, London, Manchester and Glasgow.

The Irish Nationalist movement had grown strongly through the 19th century. Some, such as the Fenians, favoured complete independence. Others, such as Charles Stuart Parnell, advocated 'Home Rule', in which Ireland would remain in the UK but have its own parliament.

### 3.4.15 克里米亞戰爭

從 1853 年至 1856 年，英國在克里米亞戰爭與土耳其和法國聯手對抗俄羅斯。這是第一次被媒體以新聞報導和圖片廣泛報導的戰爭。戰爭狀況很差，許多士兵不是因從戰爭創傷而是在醫院感染疾病而死亡。維多利亞女王在這場戰爭過程中引入了維多利亞十字勳章以表揚英勇士兵的行為。

#### **弗羅倫斯·南丁格爾 (1820 – 1910)**

弗羅倫斯·南丁格爾生於意大利一個英國家庭。在 31 歲的時候，她在德國受訓練成護士。1854 年，她去了土耳其，並在部隊醫院工作，照顧克里米亞戰爭中的士兵。她和她的護士同事改善了醫院的狀況和降低死亡率。1860 年，她在倫敦聖托馬斯醫院設立了南丁格爾護士培訓學校。這所是第一個同類型的學校。給許多佛羅倫薩使用的做法，這學校至今依然被保留著。她經常被視為現代護理的奠基人。

### 3.4.16 19 世紀的愛爾蘭

愛爾蘭的條件不如在英國其他地區。三分之二的人口仍然依靠在非常小的農地種地謀生。許多人只靠馬鈴薯作為主要食糧。在世紀中葉，馬鈴薯作物失收，其後愛爾蘭遭遇了飢荒。百萬人因疾病和飢餓而死。一百五十萬人離開愛爾蘭。一些移民到美國和其他國家，有些來到英格蘭。在 1861 年，有大量愛爾蘭人口聚居在利物浦、倫敦、曼徹斯特和格拉斯哥等城市。愛爾蘭民族主義運動在 19 世紀迅速增長。有些人如費尼安斯贊成完全獨立。其他人，如查爾斯·斯圖爾特·帕內爾則主張自治 - 愛爾蘭將繼續留在英國，但有自己的議會。



### 3.4.17 The right to vote

As the middle classes in the wealthy industrial towns and cities grew in influence, they began to demand more political power. The Reform Act of 1832 had greatly increased the number of people with the right to vote. The Act also abolished the old pocket and rotten boroughs (see [Chapter 4](#)) and more parliamentary seats were given to the towns and cities. There was a permanent shift of political power from the countryside to the towns but voting was still based on ownership of property. This meant that members of the working class were still unable to vote.

A movement began to demand the vote for the working classes and other people without property. Campaigners, called the Chartists, presented petitions to Parliament. At first they seemed to be unsuccessful, but in 1867 there was another Reform Act. This created many more urban seats in Parliament and reduced the amount of property that people needed to have before they could vote. However, the majority of men still did not have the right to vote and no women could vote.

Politicians realised that the increased number of voters meant that they needed to persuade people to vote for them if they were to be sure of being elected to Parliament. The political parties began to create organisations to reach out to ordinary voters. Universal suffrage (the right of every adult, male or female, to vote) followed in the next century.

In common with the rest of Europe, women in 19th century Britain had fewer rights than men. Until 1870, when a woman got married, her earnings, property and money automatically belonged to her husband. Acts of Parliament in 1870 and 1882 gave wives the right to keep their own earnings and property. In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, an increasing number of women campaigned and demonstrated for greater rights and, in particular, the right to vote. They formed the women's suffrage movement and became known as 'suffragettes'.

#### **Emmeline Pankhurst (1858–1928)**

Emmeline Pankhurst was born in Manchester in 1858. She set up the Women's Franchise League in 1889, which fought to get the vote in local elections for married women. In 1903 she helped found the Women's Social and Political Union (WSPU). This was the first group whose members were called 'suffragettes'. The group used civil disobedience as part of their protest to gain the vote for women. They chained themselves to railings, smashed windows and committed arson. Many of the women, including Emmeline, went on hunger strike. In 1918, women over the age of 30 were given voting rights and the right to stand for Parliament, partly in recognition of the contribution women made to the war effort during the First World War. Shortly before Emmeline's death in 1928, women were given the right to vote at the age of 21, the same as men.

### 3.4.17 投票權

隨著富裕工業城鎮和城市的中產階級影響力日增，他們開始要求更多政治權力。1832 年的改革法案已經大大增加擁有投票權的人數。該法案還廢除了「舊口袋和衰敗選區」，還把更多的議會席位給了城鎮和城市。政治權力從農村移到城鎮，但投票還是基於產權。這意味著工人階級的成員仍然無法投票。

有人民運動開始要給工人階級和其他人沒有財產的人投票權。民運人士查得斯向議會提出請願。起初，他們似乎是不成功的，但在 1867 年法案改革。這在議會創造了更多的城市席位和減少可擁投票權的財產額。然而，大多數人還是沒有投票權，也沒有婦女可以投票。

政客們意識到，選民人數的增加意味著如果他們要被選進議會，他們便需要說服人們為他們投票。各政黨開始組建組織以深入普通選民。普選（每個成年，男性或女性都有權利投票）在下一世紀開始進行。

與其他歐洲國家同樣，女性在英國 19 世紀比男性享有較少權利。1870 年前，當女人結婚了，她的收入、財產和金錢自動歸於她丈夫所有。國會在 1870 年和 1882 年通過讓妻子保留自己收入和財產的權利的法案。在 19 世紀末和 20 世紀初，越來越多的婦女的競選，並抗議要求更多權利，特別是選舉權。他們成立了婦女選舉權運動。

#### **埃米琳·潘克赫斯特 (1858 – 1928)**

埃米琳潘克赫斯特出生於 1858 年曼徹斯特。她於 1889 年成立了爭取已婚婦女參與地方投票的婦女選舉權協會。1903 年，她幫助建立了婦女社會政治聯盟 (WSPU)。她們的成員是首批被稱為「婦女參政權論者」的小組。該小組以公民不服從為她們的抗議理由以爭取女性投票權。她們把自己鎖在欄杆上，砸碎窗戶及縱火。女包括埃米琳的許多婦進行絕食。1918 年，30 歲以上的女性得到了投票權及參選議會的權利，以表彰女性在第一次世界大戰期間作出的貢獻。前不久埃米琳潘克於 1928 年去世後不久，婦女被賦予能在 21 歲後投票，與男人的投票權相同。

### 3.4.18 The future of the Empire

Although the British Empire continued to grow until the 1920s, there was already discussion in the late 19th century about its future direction. Supporters of expansion believed that the Empire benefited Britain through increased trade and commerce. Others thought the Empire had become over-expanded and that the frequent conflicts in many parts of the Empire, such as India's north-west frontier or southern Africa, were a drain on resources. Yet the great majority of British people believed in the Empire as a force for good in the world.

The Boer War of 1899 to 1902 made the discussions about the future of the Empire more urgent. The British went to war in South Africa with settlers from the Netherlands called the Boers. The Boers fought fiercely and the war went on for over three years. Many died in the fighting and many more from disease. There was some public sympathy for the Boers and people began to question whether the Empire could continue. As different parts of the Empire developed, they won greater freedom and autonomy from Britain. Eventually, by the second half of the 20th century, there was, for the most part, an orderly transition from Empire to Commonwealth, with countries being granted their independence.

#### Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936)

Rudyard Kipling was born in India in 1865 and later lived in India, the UK and the USA. He wrote books and poems set in both India and the UK. His poems and novels reflected the idea that the British Empire was a force for good. Kipling was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1907. His books include the Just So Stories and The Jungle Book, which continue to be popular today. His poem If has often been voted among the UK's favourite poems. It begins with these words:

*'If you can keep your head when all about you  
Are losing theirs and blaming it on you;  
If you can trust yourself when all men doubt you,  
But make allowance for their doubting too;  
If you can wait and not be tired by waiting,  
Or being lied about, don't deal in lies,  
Or being hated, don't give way to hating,  
And yet don't look too good, nor talk too wise'  
(If, Rudyard Kipling)*

#### • Check that you understand

- The change in the balance of power between Parliament and the monarchy
- When and why Scotland joined England and Wales to become Great Britain
- The reasons for a rebellion in Scotland led by Bonnie Prince Charlie
- The ideas of the Enlightenment
- The importance of the Industrial Revolution and development of industry
- The slave trade and when it was abolished
- The growth of the British Empire
- How democracy developed during this period

### 3.4.18 帝國的未來

雖然大英帝國在 1920 年代前繼續成長，在 19 世紀後期已經有關於它未來方向的討論。擴張的支持者認為，英國受惠於帝國貿易和商業活動的上昇。其他人則認為帝國已經過度擴張，而在帝國許多地方（如印度西北邊境或南部非洲國家）經常發生衝突更耗費大量資源。然而，大多數英國人認為在帝國有能力令世界更美好。

1899 年到 1902 年布爾戰爭使關於帝國未來的討論更為迫切。英國在南非與被稱為布爾人的荷蘭殖民者發動戰爭。布爾人激烈戰鬥，戰爭持續了三年多。很多人在戰鬥中死亡，還有更多的在疾病下死去。有些公眾開始同情對布爾人並質疑帝國該否繼續戰爭。隨著帝國的不同部分續漸開發，他們得到了英國給予更大的自由和自主權。最終在 20 世紀下半葉，在大致有序的情況下，英國從帝國過渡到聯邦，並肯定其他國家的獨立性。

#### 魯德亞德·吉卜林 (1865 – 1936)

魯德亞德·吉卜林生於 1865 年印度，後來居住在印度，英國和美國。他在印度和英國寫書和詩集。他的詩和小說反映了大英帝國是一種正義力量的想法。吉卜林於 1907 年被授予諾貝爾文學獎。他的著作包括了《原來如此的故事》和《叢林奇譚》，今天依然很受歡迎。

他的詩《如果》經常被評選為英國最喜愛的詩歌之一。它由些話開始：

*假如舉世倉皇失措，人人怪你，而你能保持冷靜；  
假如舉世見疑，而你能相信自己，還能原諒他們的懷疑；  
假如你能等待，而不怕等得累，或受謗時不屑以牙還牙，或被恨時不怨天尤人，  
就算形象已被摧毀、還受不留餘地的非言  
(《如果》，魯德亞德·吉卜林)*

Check that you understand

- 議會和君主之間的權力轉移
- 什麼時候和為什麼蘇格蘭加入英格蘭和威爾士之列，成為大不列顛
- 邦尼王子查理在蘇格蘭叛亂的原因
- 啟蒙運動的思想
- 工業革命的重要性和行業發展
- 奴隸貿易及它何時被廢除
- 大英帝國的崛起
- 在此期間民主的發展

## 3.5 The 20th Century

### 3.5.1 The First World War

The early 20th century was a time of optimism in Britain. The nation, with its expansive Empire, well-admired navy, thriving industry and strong political institutions, was what is now known as a global 'superpower'. It was also a time of social progress. Financial help for the unemployed, old-age pensions and free school meals were just a few of the important measures introduced.

Various laws were passed to improve safety in the workplace; town planning rules were tightened to prevent the further development of slums; and better support was given to mothers and their children after divorce or separation. Local government became more democratic and a salary for members of Parliament (MPs) was introduced for the first time, making it easier for more people to take part in public life.

This era of optimism and progress was cut short when war broke out between several European nations. On 28 June 1914, Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria was assassinated. This set off a chain of events leading to the First World War (1914–18). But while the assassination provided the trigger for war, other factors – such as a growing sense of nationalism in many European states; increasing militarism; imperialism; and the division of the major European powers into two camps – all set the conditions for war.

The conflict was centred in Europe, but it was a global war involving nations from around the world. Britain was part of the Allied Powers, which included (amongst others) France, Russia, Japan, Belgium, Serbia – and later, Greece, Italy, Romania and the United States. The whole of the British Empire was involved in the conflict – for example, more than a million Indians fought on behalf of Britain in lots of different countries, and around 40,000 were killed. Men from the West Indies, Africa, Australia, New Zealand and Canada also fought with the British. The Allies fought against the Central Powers – mainly Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire, the Ottoman Empire and later Bulgaria. Millions of people were killed or wounded, with more than 2 million British casualties. One battle, the British attack on the Somme in July 1916, resulted in about 60,000 British casualties on the first day alone.

The First World War ended at 11.00 am on 11th November 1918 with victory for Britain and its allies.

*Soldiers fighting in the trenches during the First World War*



## 3.5 20 世紀

### 3.5.1 第一次世界大戰

在英國 20 世紀初是一個樂觀的時期。國家憑藉其廣闊的帝國，令人尊敬的海軍，蓬勃的行業發展和強大的政治機構，而被稱為全球「超級大國」。這也是社會進步的時間。為失業人士，養老金和免費校餐的經濟援助只是出台的重要措施的一小部分。

各種法律獲得通過以改善工作場所的安全；城市規劃規則被收緊以防止貧民窟進一步發大；離婚或分居後的母親和她們的孩子得到更好的援助。當地政府變得更加民主，議會的成員薪金制首次被引入，使更多人更容易參與公共活動。

樂觀和進步的時代隨一些歐洲國家之間戰爭爆發而縮短。1914 年 6

月 28 日奧地利的弗朗茨·斐迪南大公被暗殺。這掀起連鎖反應，導致了第一次世界大戰 (1914–1918 年)。不過，雖然暗殺觸發戰爭，其他因素如許多歐洲國家越來越強的民族主義，越來越多的軍國主義，帝國主義，和主要歐洲列強分裂為兩個陣營，全都成為戰爭引子。

衝突雖然集中在歐洲，但它是一個涉及來自世界各地國家的全球性戰爭。英國屬於協約國，盟友包括法國，俄羅斯，日本，比利時，塞爾維亞，後來希臘，意大利，羅馬尼亞和美國也相繼加入。整個大英帝國也被捲入衝突，例如超過一百萬的印度人為英國在許多不同的國家上陣，大約 40,000 人死亡。來自西印度群島，非洲，澳大利亞，新西蘭和加拿大的人也與英國並肩作戰。協約國的敵人同盟國主要是德國，奧匈帝國，奧斯曼帝國和後來保加利亞。數以百萬計的人喪生或受傷，有超過二百萬英國人傷亡。其中一次戰鬥中，英國在 1916 年 7 月攻擊索姆河，僅僅在第一天就導致了 60,000 英國人傷亡。

第一次世界大戰於 1918 年 11 月 11 日上午 11 時在英國及其盟國勝利下結束。

*士兵在第一次世界大戰期間，在戰壕間戰鬥*

## 3.5.2 The partition of Ireland

In 1913, the British government promised 'Home Rule' for Ireland. The proposal was to have a self-governing Ireland with its own parliament but still part of the UK. A Home Rule Bill was introduced in Parliament. It was opposed by the Protestants in the north of Ireland, who threatened to resist Home Rule by force.

The outbreak of the First World War led the British government to postpone any changes in Ireland. Irish Nationalists were not willing to wait and in 1916 there was an uprising (the Easter Rising) against the British in Dublin. The leaders of the uprising were executed under military law. A guerrilla war against the British army and the police in Ireland followed. In 1921 a peace treaty was signed and in 1922 Ireland became two countries. The six counties in the north which were mainly Protestant remained part of the UK under the name Northern Ireland. The rest of Ireland became the Irish Free State. It had its own government and became a republic in 1949.

There were people in both parts of Ireland who disagreed with the split between the North and the South. They still wanted Ireland to be one independent country. Years of disagreement led to a terror campaign in Northern Ireland and elsewhere. The conflict between those wishing for full Irish independence and those wishing to remain loyal to the British government is often referred to as 'the Troubles'.

## 3.5.3 The inter-war period

In the 1920s, many people's living conditions got better. There were improvements in public housing and new homes were built in many towns and cities. However, in 1929, the world entered the 'Great Depression' and some parts of the UK suffered mass unemployment. The effects of the depression of the 1930s were felt differently in different parts of the UK. The traditional heavy industries such as shipbuilding were badly affected but new industries – including the automobile and aviation industries – developed. As prices generally fell, those in work had more money to spend. Car ownership doubled from 1 million to 2 million between 1930 and 1939. In addition, many new houses were built. It was also a time of cultural blossoming, with writers such as Graham Greene and Evelyn Waugh prominent. The economist John Maynard Keynes published influential new theories of economics. The BBC started radio broadcasts in 1922 and began the world's first regular television service in 1936.

## 3.5.2 愛爾蘭分裂

年，英國政府承諾讓愛爾蘭自治。這項建議讓自治愛爾蘭擁有自己的議會，但仍是英國的一部分。地方自治法案被引入議會。北愛爾蘭的新教徒否決法案，揚言要以武力抵制自治。

第一次世界大戰爆發導致英國政府推遲在愛爾蘭的改革。愛爾蘭民族主義者不願意等待，在 1916 於愛爾蘭都柏林起義（復活節起義）反對英國。起義的領導人被軍法處死。針對英國軍隊和警察的游擊戰在愛爾蘭接踵而至。1921 年和平條約簽署成立，並於 1922 年愛爾蘭變兩個國家。其中主要是新教的北面六縣仍然以北愛爾蘭之名保留成英國的一部分。愛爾蘭的其餘部分成為愛爾蘭自由邦。它有它自己的政府並於 1949 年成為共和國。

愛爾蘭的兩個部分也有人不同意北方和南方之間的分裂。他們仍然希望愛爾蘭為一個獨立的國家。多年分歧導致了在北愛爾蘭和其他地方的恐怖活動。那些希望全愛爾蘭獨立和那些希望忠於英國政府之間的衝突常常被稱為「動亂」。

## 3.5.3 兩次世界大戰之間

在 1920 年代，很多人的生活條件變得更好。公共房屋改善了，許多城鎮和城市也建造了新房屋。然而，在 1929 年，世界進入了「大蕭條」，英國的一些地區遭受了大規模失業。1930 年代大蕭條的影響在英國不同地區有所不同。

傳統的重工業，如造船受到了嚴重影響，但包括汽車和航空業等新的產業持續發展。隨著價格的普遍下跌，那些有工作的人有更多的錢可花。1930 年和 1939 年間，汽車量從 100 萬至 200 萬增加了一倍。此外，許多新房子新建。這也是文化開花的時間，如作家格雷厄姆·格林和伊夫林沃等人湧現。經濟學家約翰·梅納德·凱恩斯發表具影響力的新的經濟學理論。英國廣播公司於 1922 年開始電台廣播，也在 1936 年開始了世界上第一個正規的電視服務。

## 3.5.4 The Second World War

Adolf Hitler came to power in Germany in 1933. He believed that the conditions imposed on Germany by the Allies after the First World War were unfair; he also wanted to conquer more land for the German people. He set about renegotiating treaties, building up arms, and testing Germany's military strength in nearby countries. The British government tried to avoid another war. However, when Hitler invaded Poland in 1939, Britain and France declared war in order to stop his aggression.

The war was initially fought between the Axis powers (fascist Germany and Italy and the Empire of Japan) and the Allies. The main countries on the allied side were the UK, France, Poland, Australia, New Zealand, Canada, and the Union of South Africa.

Having occupied Austria and invaded Czechoslovakia, Hitler followed his invasion of Poland by taking control of Belgium and the Netherlands. Then, in 1940, German forces defeated allied troops and advanced through France. At this time of national crisis, Winston Churchill became Prime Minister and Britain's war leader.



*Winston Churchill, best known for his leadership of the UK during the Second World War*

**Winston Churchill (1874–1965)** : Churchill was the son of a politician and, before becoming a Conservative MP in 1900, was a soldier and journalist. In May 1940 he became Prime Minister. He refused to surrender to the Nazis and was an inspirational leader to the British people in a time of great hardship. He lost the General Election in 1945 but returned as Prime Minister in 1951.

He was an MP until he stood down at the 1964 General Election. Following his death in 1965, he was given a state funeral. He remains a much-admired figure to this day, and in 2002 was voted the greatest Briton of all time by the public. During the War, he made many famous speeches including lines which you may still hear:

**'I have nothing to offer but blood, toil, tears and sweat'**

Churchill's first speech to the House of Commons after he became Prime Minister, 1940

**'We shall fight on the beaches,  
we shall fight on the landing grounds,  
we shall fight in the fields and in the streets,  
we shall fight in the hills;  
we shall never surrender'**

Speech to the House of Commons after Dunkirk 1940

**'Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so few'**

Speech to the House of Commons during the Battle of Britain, 1940

## 3.5.4 第二次世界大戰

希特勒於 1933 年在德國上台。他認為第一次世界大戰後協約國強加於德國的條款是不公平，同時他也想為德國人征服更多土地。他開始重新談判條約，建立了軍備，並在德國附近的國家測試軍事實力。英國政府試圖避免另一場戰爭。然而，當希特勒在 1939 年入侵波蘭，英國和法國為了阻止他的侵略而正式宣戰。

這場戰爭最初是軸心國（法西斯德國和意大利和日本帝國）和同盟國之間的戰鬥。盟軍方主要國家是英國，法國，波蘭，澳大利亞，新西蘭，加拿大和南非聯盟。

佔領了奧地利和入侵捷克後，希特勒入侵波蘭後同時奪取了比利時和荷蘭的控制權。然後在 1940 年，德國軍隊擊敗盟軍部隊，並進入法國。國難當頭的時刻，溫斯頓·丘吉爾出任成為首相和英國戰爭領袖。

*溫斯頓·丘吉爾最出名的是他在第二次世界大戰期間領導英國的能力*

**溫斯頓·丘吉爾 (1874 – 1965)**

丘吉爾是一個政治家的兒子，在 1900 年成為保守黨議員之前是一名軍人和記者。1940 年 5 月，他成為首相。他拒絕向納粹主義投降，是英國在困難時期一個鼓舞人心的領導者。他於 1945 年大選落敗，但在 1951 年回歸成為首相。

直到他在 1964 大選後退休前，他一直是國會議員。他在 1965 年去世後被賦予國葬。至今他仍然是一個備受推崇的人物，並於 2002 年被評為有史以來最偉大的英國人公眾。在戰爭期間，他做了許多著名的演講，包括以下：

**「我能奉獻的沒有其它，只有熱血，辛勞，眼淚和汗水」**

丘吉爾 1940 年成為首相後第一次對下議院發表演講

**「我們將在海灘上作戰，**

**我們將在陸地我們將在著陸場地打，**

**我們將在田野和街頭作戰，**

**我們將在山區作戰，**

**我們決不投降」**

敦克爾克後在國會下院的首次演說（見下）。

**「戰爭史上，這麼多人欠下這麼少人這樣大的恩情，前所未有」**

不列顛之戰期間在國會下院的演說（見下），1940

As France fell, the British decided to evacuate British and French soldiers from France in a huge naval operation. Many civilian volunteers in small pleasure and fishing boats from Britain helped the Navy to rescue more than 300,000 men from the beaches around Dunkirk. Although many lives and a lot of equipment were lost, the evacuation was a success and meant that Britain was better able to continue the fight against the Germans. The evacuation gave rise to the phrase 'the Dunkirk spirit'.

From the end of June 1940 until the German invasion of the Soviet Union in June 1941, Britain and the Empire stood almost alone against Nazi Germany.

Hitler wanted to invade Britain, but before sending in troops, Germany needed to control the air. The Germans waged an air campaign against Britain, but the British resisted with their fighter planes and eventually won the crucial aerial battle against the Germans, called 'the Battle of Britain', in the summer of 1940. The most important planes used by the Royal Air Force in the Battle of Britain were the Spitfire and the Hurricane – which were designed and built in Britain. Despite this crucial victory, the German air force was able to continue bombing London and other British cities at night-time. This was called the Blitz. Coventry was almost totally destroyed and a great deal of damage was done in other cities, especially in the East End of London. Despite the destruction, there was a strong national spirit of resistance in the UK. The phrase 'the Blitz spirit' is still used today to describe Britons pulling together in the face of adversity.

At the same time as defending Britain, the British military was fighting the Axis on many other fronts. In Singapore, the Japanese defeated the British and then occupied Burma, threatening India. The United States entered the war when the Japanese bombed its naval base at Pearl Harbour in December 1941.

That same year, Hitler attempted the largest invasion in history by attacking the Soviet Union. It was a fierce conflict, with huge losses on both sides. German forces were ultimately repelled by the Soviets, and the damage they sustained proved to be a pivotal point in the war.

當法國淪陷，英國決定以一個巨大的海上作戰撤離在法國的英國和法國士兵。許多來自英國的平民志願者和漁船幫助海軍從敦刻爾克的海灘救獲超過 30 萬人。儘管許多人喪生和丟失了大量設備，疏散卻很成功，意味著英國能夠繼續反抗德國。這疏散帶起了一句話 - 「敦刻爾克精神」。

從 1940 年 6 月後期，直到德國在 1941 年 6 月入侵蘇聯，英國和大英帝國幾乎獨自對抗納粹德國。

希特勒想入侵英國，但派遣部隊之前德國需要先控制上空。德軍對英國發動了空襲行動，但英國以戰機抵制並最終在 1940 年的夏天贏得了對德國的關鍵空戰，被稱為「不列顛之戰」。在不列顛之戰中皇家空軍最重要的飛機是在英國設計和建造的噴火式戰鬥機和颶風式戰鬥機。儘管英國得這關鍵勝利，但德國空軍在夜間依然繼續轟炸倫敦和其他英國城市。這被稱為閃電戰。考文垂幾乎被完全摧毀，其他城市也受到極大損害，尤其是在倫敦東區。儘管遭到破壞，英國人依然保持強大的民族抵抗精神。那句「閃電戰精神」今天仍然被用來形容英國人在逆境中的團結。

保衛英國本土同時，英國軍方也在許多其他地方與軸心國對戰。在新加坡，日本打敗了英國，然後佔領緬甸，威脅印度。在 1941 年 12 月，美國被日軍炸毀其在珍珠港海軍基地後參戰。

同年，希特勒企圖以史上最大規模的入侵攻擊蘇聯。這是一場激烈的衝突，雙方付出了巨大的代價。德國軍隊最終由蘇聯軍擊退，他們這次所受的傷害種下日後戰敗的禍根。



### The Royal Air Force helped to defend Britain in the Second World War

The allied forces gradually gained the upper hand, winning significant victories in North Africa and Italy. German losses in the Soviet Union, combined with the support of the Americans, meant that the Allies were eventually strong enough to attack Hitler's forces in Western Europe. On 6 June 1944, allied forces landed in Normandy (this event is often referred to as 'D-Day'). Following victory on the beaches of Normandy, the allied forces pressed on through France and eventually into Germany. The Allies comprehensively defeated Germany in May 1945.

The war against Japan ended in August 1945 when the United States dropped its newly developed atom bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Scientists led by Ernest Rutherford, working at Manchester and then Cambridge University, were the first to 'split the atom' and took part in the Manhattan Project in the United States, which developed the atomic bomb. The war was finally over.

#### Alexander Fleming (1881–1955)

Born in Scotland, Fleming moved to London as a teenager and later qualified as a doctor. He was researching influenza (the 'flu') in 1928 when he discovered penicillin. This was then further developed into a usable drug by the scientists Howard Florey and Ernst Chain. By the 1940s it was in mass production. Fleming won the Nobel Prize in Medicine in 1945. Penicillin is still used to treat bacterial infections today.

#### Check that you understand

- What happened during the First World War
- The partition of Ireland and the establishment of the UK as it is today
- The events of the Second World War

### 皇家空軍在第二次世界大戰中保護英國

盟軍逐漸佔了上風，在北非和意大利贏得顯著的勝利。德國在蘇聯戰敗，加上美國人支持同盟國，這意味著盟軍最終有實力攻擊在西歐的希特勒軍隊。在 1944 年 6 月 6 日盟軍在諾曼底登陸（此事件通常被稱為「D 日」）。在諾曼底海灘勝的利後，盟軍通過法國最終進入德國。1945 年 5 月盟軍全面擊敗德國。

抗日戰爭在 1945 年 8 月，美國在日本城市廣島和長崎投下了新開發的原子彈後結束。曾在曼徹斯特及劍橋大學工作歐內斯特·盧瑟福領導一班科學家，成為首批成功分裂原子並參加了開發原子彈的美國曼哈頓計劃的人。戰爭終於結束了。

#### 亞歷山大·弗萊明 (1881 – 1955)

出生於蘇格蘭，弗萊明少年時搬到了倫敦，後來作成為一名醫生。在 1928 年他發現青黴素時，他正是研究流感。後來科學家霍華德·弗洛裡和厄恩斯特·柴恩再進一步把青黴素發展成為一種可用的藥物。這藥到了 1940 年代被大量生產。弗萊明於 1945 年獲得了諾貝爾醫學獎。青黴素至今仍用於治療細菌感染。

#### Check that you understand

- 第一次世界大戰期間發生了什麼事
- 愛爾蘭的分裂及本天英國的建立過程
- 第二次世界大戰的事件

## 3.6 Britain Since 1945

### 3.6.1 The welfare state

Although the UK had won the war, the country was exhausted economically and the people wanted change. During the war, there had been significant reforms to the education system and people now looked for wider social reforms.

In 1945 the British people elected a Labour government. The new Prime Minister was Clement Attlee, who promised to introduce the welfare state outlined in the Beveridge Report. In 1948, Aneurin (Nye) Bevan, the Minister for Health, led the establishment of the National Health Service (NHS), which guaranteed a minimum standard of health care for all, free at the point of use. A national system of benefits was also introduced to provide 'social security', so that the population would be protected from the 'cradle to the grave'. The government took into public ownership (nationalised) the railways, coal mines and gas, water and electricity supplies.

Another aspect of change was self-government for former colonies. In 1947, independence was granted to nine countries, including India, Pakistan and Ceylon (now Sri Lanka). Other colonies in Africa, the Caribbean and the Pacific achieved independence over the next 20 years.

The UK developed its own atomic bomb and joined the new North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), an alliance of nations set up to resist the perceived threat of invasion by the Soviet Union and its allies.

Britain had a Conservative government from 1951 to 1964. The 1950s were a period of economic recovery after the war and increasing prosperity for working people. The Prime Minister of the day, Harold Macmillan, was famous for his 'wind of change' speech about decolonisation and independence for the countries of the Empire.

#### **Clement Attlee (1883–1967)**

Clement Attlee was born in London in 1883. His father was a solicitor and, after studying at Oxford University, Attlee became a barrister. He gave this up to do social work in East London and eventually became a Labour MP. He was Winston Churchill's Deputy Prime Minister in the wartime coalition government and became Prime Minister after the Labour Party won the 1945 election. He was Prime Minister from 1945 to 1951 and led the Labour Party for 20 years. Attlee's government undertook the nationalisation of major industries (like coal and steel), created the National Health Service and implemented many of Beveridge's plans for a stronger welfare state. Attlee also introduced measures to improve the conditions of workers.

## 3.6 英國自 1945 年以來

### 3.6.1 福利國家

儘管已經贏得了戰爭，但英國國家經濟枯竭，人民希望看到變。在戰爭期間，曾有顯著的教育制度改革，現在人們尋找更廣泛的社會改革。

1945 年，英國人民選出工黨政府。新首相是克萊門特·艾德禮，他答應引進貝弗里奇報告中列出的福利國家。1948 年，衛生部長安奈林（奈）貝文，帶頭成立了國家衛生服務（NHS），保證了全民享有免費最低標準的醫療保健。國家福利系統也被引入以提供社會保障，因此，人口會受到一生的保障。政府把鐵路、煤礦、天然氣、水、電的供應到公有製（國有化）。另一個方面的變化是前殖民變成地自治。1947 年，九個國家准予獨立，包括印度、巴基斯坦、錫蘭（現今的斯里蘭卡）。在非洲、加勒比和太平洋地區等其他殖民地在往後 20 年也取得獨立。

英國開發了自己的原子彈，並加入了為抵禦蘇聯及其盟國入侵威脅的新北大西洋公約組織（北約）。

英國於 1951 年至 1964 年間有一個保守黨政府。1950 年代是一個戰爭後經濟復蘇，工作人口日益繁榮的時期。當時的首相哈羅德·麥克米倫因他有關殖民地自治化和國家脫離帝國獨立的「變革的風」演說而聞名。

#### **克萊門特·艾德禮 (1883 – 1967)**

克萊門特·艾德禮出生於 1883 年倫敦。他的父親是一名律師，艾德禮在牛津大學學習後同樣成為大律師。他為在東倫敦的社會工作而放棄大律師職位，並最終成為工黨議員。他是溫斯頓·丘吉爾在戰時聯合政府的副總理，並於工黨贏得 1945 年大選後成為首相。他是 1945 年至 1951 年的首相，並領導工黨 20 年。艾德禮政府把主要產業（如煤炭和鋼鐵）國有化，創建國家衛生服務組織並實施了貝弗里奇計劃內提倡的一個更強的福利國家。艾德禮還推出措施以改善工人的工作條件。



### **William Beveridge (1879–1963)**

William Beveridge (later Lord Beveridge) was a British economist and social reformer. He served briefly as a Liberal MP and was subsequently the leader of the Liberals in the House of Lords but is best known for the 1942 report Social Insurance and Allied Services (known as the Beveridge Report). The report was commissioned by the wartime government in 1941. It recommended that the government should find ways of fighting the five 'Giant Evils' of Want, Disease, Ignorance, Squalor and Idleness and provided the basis of the modern welfare state.

### **R A Butler (1902–82)**

Richard Austen Butler (later Lord Butler) was born in 1902. He became a Conservative MP in 1923 and held several positions before becoming responsible for education in 1941. In this role, he oversaw the introduction of the Education Act 1944 (often called 'The Butler Act'), which introduced free secondary education in England and Wales. The education system has changed significantly since the Act was introduced, but the division between primary and secondary schools that it enforced still remains in most areas of Britain.

### **Dylan Thomas (1914–53)**

Dylan Thomas was a Welsh poet and writer. He often read and performed his work in public, including for the BBC. His most well-known works include the radio play Under Milk Wood, first performed after his death in 1954, and the poem Do Not Go Gentle into That Good Night, which he wrote for his dying father in 1952. He died at the age of 39 in New York. There are several memorials to him in his birthplace, Swansea, including a statue and the Dylan Thomas Centre.

## **3.6.2 Migration in post-war Britain**

Rebuilding Britain after the Second World War was a huge task. There were labour shortages and the British government encouraged workers from Ireland and other parts of Europe to come to the UK and help with the reconstruction. In 1948, people from the West Indies were also invited to come and work.

During the 1950s, there was still a shortage of labour in the UK. Further immigration was therefore encouraged for economic reasons, and many industries advertised for workers from overseas. For example, centres were set up in the West Indies to recruit people to drive buses. Textile and engineering firms from the north of England and the Midlands sent agents to India and Pakistan to find workers. For about 25 years, people from the West Indies, India, Pakistan and (later) Bangladesh travelled to work and settle in Britain.

### **威廉·貝弗里奇 (1879 – 1963)**

威廉·貝弗里奇 (後來貝弗里奇勳爵) 是英國經濟學家和社會改革者。他曾短暫地出任自由黨國會議員，隨後成為上議院自由黨的領導者，但他最出名的是 1942 年發表有關社會保險及相關福利服務的報告 (稱為貝弗里奇報告)。該報告是受 1941 年戰時政府委託而成。它建議政府應該找方法應對五個「巨大邪魔」(慾望、疾病、愚昧、污穢和懶惰)，並提供了現代福利國家的基礎。

### **理查德·奧斯汀巴特勒 (1902 – 1982)**

理查德·奧斯汀巴特勒 (後來巴特勒勳爵) 生於 1902 年。他於 1923 年成為了保守黨國會議員，並在 1941 年負責教育之前擔任過多項職務。在這個職位上，他負責引進 1944 年的教育法 (通常被稱為「巴特勒法案」)，使英格蘭和威爾士得到免費中學教育。該法出台後教育系統已顯著改變，但它訂立小學和中學之間的分割仍然在英國的大部分地區實行。

### **狄蘭·托馬斯 (1914 – 1953)**

狄蘭·托馬斯是一個威爾士詩人和作家。他經常在公開場合朗讀和演出他的作品，包括在英國廣播公司。他最知名的作品包括在他 1954 年去世後才第一次公演的廣播劇《牛奶樹下》，和在 1952 年關於他垂死父親的詩《不要輕盈的走入那良夜》。他在 39 歲時在紐約去世。在他的出生地史雲斯有幾個他的紀念碑，包括一座雕像和狄蘭托馬斯中心。

## **3.6.2 戰後英國的移民**

在第二次世界大戰後重建英國是一個巨大的任務。勞動力短缺使英國政府鼓勵來自愛爾蘭和歐洲其他地區的工人來到英國幫助重建。1948 年，從西印度群島的人也受邀前來工作。

在 1950 年代，英國勞動力仍然短缺。因此，經濟理由驅使下進一步的移民受到鼓勵，眾多行業也為吸納海外工人而作宣傳。例如，在印度西部設立中心招聘人去駕駛公共汽車。來自英格蘭北部和中部地區的紡織和工程公司派代表到印度和巴基斯坦招攬工人。大約 25 年來，從西印度群島、印度、巴基斯坦和後來孟加拉的人前往英國工作及定居。

### 3.6.3 Social change in the 1960s

The decade of the 1960s was a period of significant social change. It was known as ‘the Swinging Sixties’. There was growth in British fashion, cinema and popular music. Two well-known pop music groups at the time were The Beatles and The Rolling Stones. People started to become better off and many bought cars and other consumer goods.

It was also a time when social laws were liberalised, for example in relation to divorce and to abortion in England, Wales and Scotland. The position of women in the workplace also improved. It was quite common at the time for employers to ask women to leave their jobs when they got married, but Parliament passed new laws giving women the right to equal pay and made it illegal for employers to discriminate against women because of their gender.

The 1960s was also a time of technological progress. Britain and France developed the world’s only supersonic commercial airliner, Concorde. New styles of architecture, including high-rise buildings and the use of concrete and steel, became common.

The number of people migrating from the West Indies, India, Pakistan and what is now Bangladesh fell in the late 1960s because the government passed new laws to restrict immigration to Britain. Immigrants were required to have a strong connection to Britain through birth or ancestry. Even so, during the early 1970s, Britain admitted 28,000 people of Indian origin who had been forced to leave Uganda.

#### 3.6.4 Some great British inventions of the 20th century

Britain has given the world some wonderful inventions. Examples from the 20th century include:

The **television** was developed by Scotsman John Logie Baird (1888–1946) in the 1920s. In 1932 he made the first television broadcast between London and Glasgow.

**Radar** was developed by Scotsman Sir Robert Watson-Watt (1892–1973), who proposed that enemy aircraft could be detected by radio waves. The first successful radar test took place in 1935.

Working with radar led Sir Bernard Lovell (1913–2012) to make new discoveries in astronomy. The radio telescope he built at **Jodrell Bank** in Cheshire was for many years the biggest in the world and continues to operate today.

### 3.6.3 年代的社會變革

1960 年往後的十年有著一段顯著的社會變革，這時期被稱為「搖擺六十年代」。英國時裝、電影和流行音樂相繼發展。當時兩個著名的流行音樂樂隊有披頭士和滾石樂隊。人們生活開始變好，很多人也買了汽車等消費品。

這也是社會法律放開的時候，例如在英格蘭、威爾士和蘇格蘭有關離婚和墮胎等法規。婦女在工作場所的地位也有所提高。雇主要求婦女結婚後離職曾相當普遍，但議會通過新法律賦予婦女同工同酬的權利，並使雇主性別歧視婦女成為非法。

1960 年代也是科技進步的時期。英國和法國研製出了世界上唯一的超音速商用客機協和號。包括高樓建築和使用混凝土和鋼材的新建築風格變得普及。

由於政府通過新的法律來限制移民到英國，從西印度群島、印度、巴基斯坦和現在的孟加拉國的移民人數在 1960 年代後期下降。移民者必須在出生或血統與英國有直接聯繫。即便如此，在 1970 年代初英國錄取了 28000 被迫離開烏干達的印度裔人。

#### 3.6.4 20 世紀一些偉大的英國發明

英國為世界帶來一些卓越的發明。從 20 世紀的例子包括：

電視是由蘇格蘭人約翰·羅傑·貝爾德 (1888 – 1946) 在 1920 年代開發。1932 年他在倫敦和格拉斯哥作首次電視直播。

雷達是由蘇格蘭人羅伯特·沃森 – 瓦特先生 (1892 – 1973) 開發，他提出敵人飛機是可以以無線電波檢測得到。首次成功測試雷達於 1935 年進行。

使月雷達讓伯納德·洛弗爾爵士 (1913 – 2012) 在天文學找到新發現。他在柴郡卓瑞爾河岸建成的無線電望遠鏡曾是年世上最大的，今天依然繼續運作。

A **Turing machine** is a theoretical mathematical device invented by Alan Turing (1912–54), a British mathematician, in the 1930s. The theory was influential in the development of computer science and the modern-day computer.

The Scottish physician and researcher John MacLeod (1876–1935) was the co-discoverer of **insulin**, used to treat diabetes.

The **structure of the DNA molecule** was discovered in 1953 through work at British universities in London and Cambridge. This discovery contributed to many scientific advances, particularly in medicine and fighting crime. Francis Crick (1916–2004), one of those awarded the Nobel Prize for this discovery, was British.

The **jet engine** was developed in Britain in the 1930s by Sir Frank Whittle (1907–96), a British Royal Air Force engineer Officer.

Sir Christopher Cockerell (1910–99), a British inventor, invented the **hovercraft** in the 1950s.

Britain and France developed **Concorde**, the world's only supersonic passenger aircraft. It first flew in 1969 and began carrying passengers in 1976. Concorde was retired from service in 2003.

The **Harrier jump jet**, an aircraft capable of taking off vertically, was also designed and developed in the UK.

In the 1960s, James Goodfellow (1937–) invented the **cash-dispensing ATM** (automatic teller machine) or 'cashpoint'. The first of these was put into use by Barclays Bank in Enfield, north London in 1967.

**IVF (in-vitro fertilisation) therapy** for the treatment of infertility was pioneered in Britain by physiologist Sir Robert Edwards (1925–) and gynaecologist Patrick Steptoe (1913–88). The world's first 'test-tube baby' was born in Oldham, Lancashire in 1978.

In 1996, two British scientists, Sir Ian Wilmut (1944–) and Keith Campbell (1954–2012), led a team which was the first to succeed in **cloning** a mammal, Dolly the sheep. This has led to further research into the possible use of cloning to preserve endangered species and for medical purposes.

Sir Peter Mansfield (1933–), a British scientist, is the co-inventor of the **MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) scanner**. This enables doctors and researchers to obtain exact and non-invasive images of human internal organs and has revolutionised diagnostic medicine.

The inventor of the **World Wide Web**, Sir Tim Berners-Lee (1955–), is British. Information was successfully transferred via the web for the first time on 25 December 1990.

圖靈機是由英國數學家阿蘭 •圖靈 (1912 – 1954) 在 1930 年代發明的一種抽象計算模型。該理論在計算機科學和現代計算機 (電腦) 的發展有著重要的影響。

蘇格蘭醫生和研究人員約翰 •麥克勞德 (1876 – 1935) 是治療糖尿病的胰島素的共同發現者。

於 1953 年在倫敦和劍橋的英國大學的工作發現了 DNA 分子結構。這發現促成了許多科學的進步，特別是在醫學和打擊犯罪。因這一發現而獲得諾貝爾獎之一的弗朗西斯 •克里克 (1916 – 2004) 是個英國人。

噴射發動機是由英國皇家空軍工程師弗蘭克 •惠特爾爵士 (1907 – 1996) 在英國 1930 年代開發。

英國發明家克里斯托弗 •科克雷爾爵士 (1910 – 1999) 在 1950 年代發明氣墊船。

英國和法國開發的協和號是世界上唯一的超音速客機。它首飛於 1969 年，並於 1976 年開始載客。協和號於 2003 年退役。

能夠垂直起飛的鷹式戰鬥機是在英國設計和開發。

1960 年代，詹姆斯 •古德費洛 (1937 - ) 發明了自動提款機。其中第一個投入使用的自動提款機於 1967 年設於倫敦北部恩菲爾德的巴克萊銀行。輔助生育技術(人工受精)以治療不育由英國生理學家羅伯特•愛德華茲爵士 (1925 - ) 和婦科醫生帕特里克•斯特普托 (1913 – 1988 ) 開創。世界上第一個試管嬰兒於 1978 年在蘭開夏郡奧爾德姆出生。

1996 年，兩名英國科學家伊恩•威爾莫特爵士 (1944 - ) 和基思•坎貝爾 (1954 – 2012 ) 帶領團隊首次成功複製哺乳動物羊 (多莉)。這引起了進一步使用複製技術以保護瀕危物種和用於醫療用途的研究。

英國科學家彼得 •曼斯菲爾德爵士 (1933 - ) 是核磁共振掃描儀的共同發明者。這使得醫生和研究人員獲得精確和非侵入性的人體內部器官圖像，並革新了醫學診斷。

萬維網的發明者錫伯納斯 – 李爵士 (1955 - ) 是英國人。信息在 1990 年 12 月 25 日首次通過網絡傳輸成功。

### 3.6.5 Problems in the economy in the 1970s

In the late 1970s, the post-war economic boom came to an end. Prices of goods and raw materials began to rise sharply and the exchange rate between the pound and other currencies was unstable. This caused problems with the 'balance of payments': imports of goods were valued at more than the price paid for exports.

Many industries and services were affected by strikes and this caused problems between the trade unions and the government. People began to argue that the unions were too powerful and that their activities were harming the UK.

The 1970s were also a time of serious unrest in Northern Ireland. In 1972, the Northern Ireland Parliament was suspended and Northern Ireland was directly ruled by the UK government. Some 3,000 people lost their lives in the decades after 1969 in the violence in Northern Ireland.

#### Mary Peters (1939–)

Born in Manchester, Mary Peters moved to Northern Ireland as a child. She was a talented athlete who won an Olympic gold medal in the pentathlon in 1972. After this, she raised money for local athletics and became the team manager for the women's British Olympic team. She continues to promote sport and tourism in Northern Ireland and was made a Dame of the British Empire in 2000 in recognition of her work.

### 3.6.6 Europe and the Common Market

West Germany, France, Belgium, Italy, Luxembourg and the Netherlands formed the European Economic Community (EEC) in 1957. At first the UK did not wish to join the EEC but it eventually did so in 1973. The UK is a full member of the European Union but does not use the Euro currency.

### 3.6.5 1970 年代的經濟問題

1970 年代後期，戰後經濟繁榮走到了盡頭。商品及原材料價格開始大幅上漲，英鎊和其他貨幣之間的匯率不穩定。這造成國際收支平衡的問題與進口貨物的價值為超過出口價格。

許多工業和服務業均受到罷工打擊，起源於工會和政府之間的問題。人們開始認為，工會太強大，他們的活動損害了英國。

1970 年代也是北愛爾蘭嚴重動盪的時刻。1972 年，北愛爾蘭議會暫停，北愛爾蘭直接由英國政府統治。約 3000 人在 1969 年以後的十年因北愛爾蘭的暴力事件喪生。

#### 瑪麗·彼得 (1939 -)

出生於曼徹斯特，瑪麗·彼得斯兒時搬到北愛爾蘭。她是一個有才華的運動員並在 1972 年奪得五項全能奧運金牌。在此之後，她為本土運動員籌錢，又成為了英國女子奧運代表隊的經理。她一直在北愛爾蘭促進體育和旅遊發展，於 2000 年被封為大英帝國女爵士以表彰她的工作。

### 3.6.6 歐洲及共同市場

西德、法國、比利時、意大利、盧森堡和荷蘭在 1957 年成立歐洲經濟共同體 (EEC)。起初英國不願加入，但最終在 1973 成為它的一份子。英國是歐盟的正式成員，但不使用歐元貨幣。

### 3.6.7 Conservative government from 1979 to 1997

Margaret Thatcher, Britain's first woman Prime Minister, led the Conservative government from 1979 to 1990. The government made structural changes to the economy through the privatisation of nationalised industries and imposed legal controls on trade union powers. Deregulation saw a great increase in the role of the City of London as an international centre for investments, insurance and other financial services. Traditional industries, such as shipbuilding and coal mining, declined. In 1982, Argentina invaded the Falkland Islands, a British overseas territory in the South Atlantic. A naval taskforce was sent from the UK and military action led to the recovery of the islands. John Major was Prime Minister after Mrs Thatcher, and helped establish the Northern Ireland peace process.

#### Margaret Thatcher (1925–2013)



Margaret Thatcher was the daughter of a grocer from Grantham in Lincolnshire. She trained as a chemist and lawyer. She was elected as a Conservative MP in 1959 and became a cabinet minister in 1970 as the Secretary of State for Education and Science. In 1975 she was elected as Leader of the Conservative Party and so became Leader of the Opposition.

Following the Conservative victory in the General Election in 1979, Margaret Thatcher became the first woman Prime Minister of the UK. She was the longest-serving Prime Minister of the 20th century, remaining in Office until 1990. During her premiership, there were a number of important economic reforms within the UK. She worked closely with the United States President, Ronald Reagan, and was one of the first Western leaders to recognise and welcome the changes in the leadership of the Soviet Union which eventually led to the end of the Cold War.

#### Roald Dahl (1916–90)

Roald Dahl was born in Wales to Norwegian parents. He served in the Royal Air Force during the Second World War. It was during the 1940s that he began to publish books and short stories. He is most well known for his children's books, although he also wrote for adults. His best-known works include *Charlie and the Chocolate Factory* and *George's Marvellous Medicine*. Several of his books have been made into films.

### 3.6.7 1979 年至 1997 年間的保守黨政府

英國歷史上第一位女首相瑪格麗特·撒切爾於 1979 至 1990 年帶領保守黨政府。政府通過工業私有化和國有化及以法律控制工會權力，對經濟作出結構性改變。放鬆管制大大加強倫敦金融城作為投資、保險及其他金融服務的國際中心地位。傳統行業如造船和煤炭有所下降。1982 年，阿根廷入侵在南大西洋的英國海外領地福克蘭群島。英國派遣海軍特遣部隊前往，這軍事行動成功奪回島嶼。

戴卓爾夫人之後的首相是約翰·梅傑。他幫助建立北愛爾蘭和平進程。

#### 瑪格麗特·戴卓爾 (1925 – 2013)

瑪格麗特·戴卓爾是在林肯郡格蘭瑟姆一個雜貨商的女兒。她被訓練成一名化學家和律師。她在 1959 年當選為保守黨議員，於 1970 以教育和科學國務卿身份年成為內閣部長。1975 年，她當選為保守黨領袖，也成為反對黨領袖。

1979 年繼保守黨在大選中勝利，戴卓爾夫人成為第一位英國女首相。她是 20 世紀任職時間最長的總理，一直在任至 1990 年。

她在位期間，英國內有一些重要的經濟改革。她與美國總統羅納德·列根密切合作，並且是首批承認並歡迎蘇聯權力變化(最終導致了冷戰的結束)的西方國家領導人之一。

#### 羅爾德·達爾 (1916 – 1990)

羅爾德·達爾出生於威爾士，父母是挪威人。在第二次世界大戰期間他曾在皇家空軍服役。1940 年代，他開始出版書籍和短篇故事。雖然他也寫成年人書籍，但他的兒童書籍卻是令他成名的原因。他最著名的作品包括《查理和巧克力工廠》和《喬治的奇妙醫學》。數本他的書被拍成了電影。

### 3.6.8 Labour government from 1997 to 2010

In 1997 the Labour Party led by Tony Blair was elected. The Blair government introduced a Scottish Parliament and a Welsh Assembly. The Scottish Parliament has substantial powers to legislate. The Welsh Assembly was given fewer legislative powers but considerable control over public services. In Northern Ireland, the Blair government was able to build on the peace process, resulting in the Good Friday Agreement signed in 1998. The Northern Ireland Assembly was elected in 1999 but suspended in 2002. It was not reinstated until 2007. Most paramilitary groups in Northern Ireland have decommissioned their arms and are inactive. Gordon Brown took over as Prime Minister in 2007.

### 3.6.9 Conflicts in Afghanistan and Iraq

Throughout the 1990s, Britain played a leading role in coalition forces involved in the liberation of Kuwait, following the Iraqi invasion in 1990, and the conflict in the Former Republic of Yugoslavia. Since 2000, British armed forces have been engaged in the global fight against international terrorism and against the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, including operations in Afghanistan and Iraq. British combat troops left Iraq in 2009. The UK now operates in Afghanistan as part of the United Nations (UN) mandated 50-nation International Security Assistance Force

(ISAF) coalition and at the invitation of the Afghan government. ISAF is working to ensure that Afghan territory can never again be used as a safe haven for international terrorism, where groups such as Al Qa'ida could plan attacks on the international community. As part of this, ISAF is building up the Afghan National Security Forces and is helping to create a secure environment in which governance and development can be extended. International forces are gradually handing over responsibility for security to the Afghans, who will have full security responsibility in all provinces by the end of 2014.

### 3.6.10 Coalition government 2010 onwards

In May 2010, and for the first time in the UK since February 1974, no political party won an overall majority in the General Election. The Conservative and Liberal Democrat parties formed a coalition and the leader of the Conservative Party, David Cameron, became Prime Minister.

#### Check that you understand

- The establishment of the welfare state
- How life in Britain changed in the 1960s and 1970s
- British inventions of the 20th century (you do not need to remember dates of births and deaths)
- Events since 1979

### 3.6.8 1997 年至 2010 年的工黨政府

1997 年，以托尼·布萊爾為首的工黨當選。布萊爾政府引入了蘇格蘭議會和威爾士議會。蘇格蘭議會擁有大的權力立法。威爾士議會被賦予較少的立法權，但控制相當大部分的公共服務。在北愛爾蘭，布萊爾政府能夠建立和平進程，促成在 1998 年簽署的耶穌受難日協定。北愛爾蘭議會於 1999 年當選，但於 2002 年解散。直到 2007 年它才恢復。大部分在北愛爾蘭的準軍事團體已經解除武裝並退役。戈登·布朗於 2007 年接任首相。

### 3.6.9 在阿富汗和伊拉克衝突

在整個 90 年代，在於 1990 年伊拉克入侵科威特和前南斯拉夫共和國的衝突後，英國在解放科威特的聯軍中發揮了主導作用。自 2000 年以來，英國軍隊一直從事打擊國際恐怖主義的全球鬥爭和反對大規模殺傷性武器，包括在阿富汗和伊拉克的軍事行動。英國作戰部隊在 2009 年離開伊拉克。英國目前以聯合國 (UN) 規定的 50 國國際安全援助部隊 (ISAF) 一部分的角色在阿富汗工作，並得到阿富汗政府的認可。

國際安全援助部隊正在努力確保阿富汗領土不能再被利用作為國際恐怖主義避風港，如可能對國際社會實行攻擊的阿蓋達組織。作為計劃其中的一部分，國際安全援助部隊正在建立阿富汗國家安全部隊，並幫助創造一個可管治和可擴展開發的安全環境。國際部隊逐步把保安責任移交給阿富汗人，阿富汗人將會由 2014 年年底在所有省份全面掌控安全責任。

### 3.6.10 2010 年起的聯合政府

2010 年 5 月，英國自 1974 年 2 月首次沒有一個政黨在大選贏得多數席位。保守黨和自由民主黨人士組成聯盟，由保守黨領袖大衛·卡梅倫出任首相。

#### Check that you understand

- 福利國家的建立
- 1960 年代和 70 年代在英國的生活改變
- 20 世紀英國發明 (你不需記住出生和死亡日期)
- 自 1979 年以來的活動

# Chapter 4: A Modern, Thriving Society

## Chapter contents

- [The UK today](#)
- [Religion](#)
- [Customs and traditions](#)
- [Sport](#)
- [Arts and culture](#)
- [Leisure](#)
- [Places of interest](#)

## 4.1 The UK Today

The UK today is a more diverse society than it was 100 years ago, in both ethnic and religious terms. Post-war immigration means that nearly 10% of the population has a parent or grandparent born outside the UK. The UK continues to be a multinational and multiracial society with a rich and varied culture. This section will tell you about the different parts of the UK and some of the important places. It will also explain some of the UK's traditions, customs and some of the popular activities that take place.

### 4.1.1 The nations of the UK

The UK is located in the north west of Europe. The longest distance on the mainland is from John O'Groats on the north coast of Scotland to Land's End in the south-west corner of England. It is about 870 miles (approximately 1,400 kilometres). Most people live in towns and cities but much of Britain is still countryside. Many people continue to visit the countryside for holidays and for leisure activities such as walking, camping and fishing.

### 4.1.2 Cities of the UK

**United Kingdom** – The capital city of the UK and England is London

**Wales** – The capital city of Wales is Cardiff

**Northern Ireland** – The capital city of Northern Ireland is Belfast

**Scotland** – The capital city of Scotland is Edinburgh

## 4: 現代·繁榮的社會

### 本章內容

- 英國今天
- 宗教
- 風俗習慣
- 體育
- 藝術與文化
- 休閒
- 名勝

### 4.1 英國今天

英國今天是一個相比 100 年前於種族和宗教方面更加多元化的社會。戰後移民意味著近十分之一的人口有英國以外出生的父母或祖父母。英國仍然是一個多國和多種族的社會，有著豐富多樣的的文化。本節將向你介紹關於英國不同部分和一些重要場所。這也將解釋一些英國的傳統和習俗，及一些受歡迎的活動。

#### 4.1.1 英國國家

英國位於歐洲的西北部。在大陸上最長的距離是從蘇格蘭北部海岸的約翰奧格羅到英格蘭西南角的蘭茲角，約 870 英里 (約 1,400 公里)。

大多數人居住在城鎮和城市，但英國很多地方仍然是農村。許多人繼續前往鄉村度假和進行休閒活動，如散步、野營和釣魚。

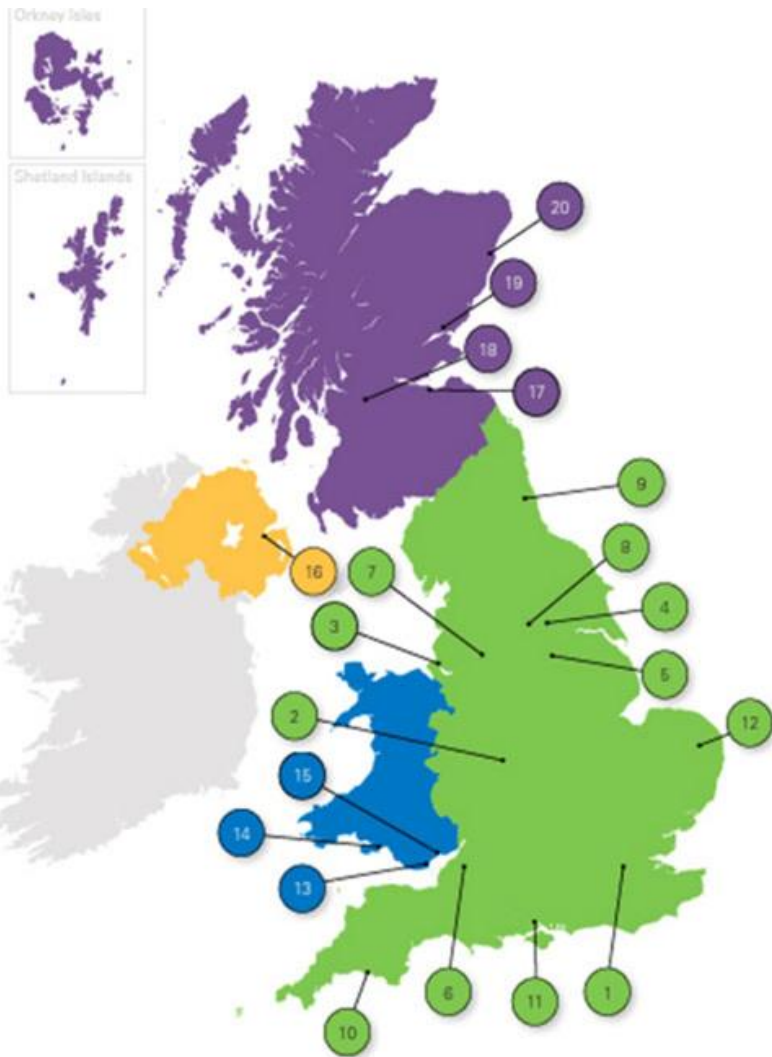
#### 4.1.2 英国城市

英国 – 首都英国和英国是伦敦

威尔士 – 首都威尔士是加的夫

北爱尔兰 – 首都北爱尔兰的贝尔法斯特是

威尔士 – 首都苏格兰爱丁堡



1. London 倫敦	11. Southampton 修咸頓
2. Birmingham 伯明翰	12. Norwich 諾維治
3. Liverpool 利物浦	13. Cardiff 卡迪夫
4. Leeds 列斯	14. Swansea 史雲斯
5. Sheffield 謝菲爾德	15. Newport 紐波特
6. Bristol 布里斯托爾	16. Belfast 貝爾法斯特
7. Manchester 曼徹斯特	17. Edinburgh 愛丁堡
8. Bradford 布拉德福德	18. Glasgow 格拉斯哥
9. Newcastle Upon Tyne 紐卡斯爾	19. Dundee 鄧迪
10. Plymouth 普利茅斯	20. Aberdeen 亞巴甸

### 4.1.3 UK currency

The currency in the UK is the pound sterling (symbol £). There are 100 pence in a pound. The denominations (values) of currency are:

coins: 1p, 2p, 5p, 10p, 20p, 50p, £1 and £2

notes: £5, £10, £20, £50.

Northern Ireland and Scotland have their own banknotes, which are valid everywhere in the UK. However, shops and businesses do not have to accept them.

### 4.1.3 英國貨幣

英國貨幣是英鎊（符號 £）。一英鎊等同 100 便士。貨幣面額（值）是：

硬幣：1 · 2 · 5 · 10 · 20 · 50 便士 · £1 和 £2 英鎊

紙幣：£5, £10, £20, £50 英鎊

北愛爾蘭和蘇格蘭有自己的鈔票，在英國所有地方通用。但是沒有法規指明商店和企業必須接受它們。



## 4.1.4 Languages and dialects

There are many variations in language in the different parts of the UK. The English language has many accents and dialects. In Wales, many people speak Welsh – a completely different language from English – and it is taught in schools and universities. In Scotland, Gaelic (again, a different language) is spoken in some parts of the Highlands and Islands, and in Northern Ireland some people speak Irish Gaelic.

## 4.1.5 Population

The table below shows how the population of the UK has changed over time.

### Population growth in the UK

Year	Population
<b>1600</b>	Just over 4 million
<b>1700</b>	5 million
<b>1801</b>	8 million
<b>1851</b>	20 million
<b>1901</b>	40 million
<b>1951</b>	50 million
<b>1998</b>	57 million
<b>2005</b>	Just under 60 million
<b>2010</b>	Just over 62 million

Source: National Statistics

Population growth has been faster in more recent years. Migration into the UK and longer life expectancy have played a part in population growth.

The population is very unequally distributed over the four parts of the UK. England more or less consistently makes up 84% of the total population, Wales around 5%, Scotland just over 8% and Northern Ireland less than 3%.

## 4.1.4 語言和方言

在英國的不同部分有許多語言上的不同。英語有許多的口音和方言。在威爾士，許多人講跟英語完全不同的威爾士語，學校和大學也有教授威爾士語。在蘇格蘭，蓋爾語（同樣是不同的語言）是部分高地和群島地區的口語，在北愛爾蘭一些人講愛爾蘭蓋爾語。

## 4.1.5 人口

下表顯示了英國的人口隨時間改變。

英國的人口增長

年	人口
<b>1600</b>	僅多於四百萬
<b>1700</b>	五百萬
<b>1801</b>	八百萬
<b>1851</b>	二千萬
<b>1901</b>	四千萬
<b>1951</b>	五千萬
<b>1998</b>	五千七百萬
<b>2005</b>	非常接近六千萬
<b>2010</b>	剛剛超過 6200 萬

來源：國家統計

人口增長於最近幾年加快了。人們移民到英國和更長壽命都是人口增長的部分原因。

人口非常不平分均的分佈在四個英國部分。英格蘭一直大概佔了總人口的 84%，威爾士約 5%，蘇格蘭剛剛超過 8%，而北愛爾蘭小於 3%。

### 4.1.5.1 An ageing population

People in the UK are living longer than ever before. This is due to improved living standards and better health care. There are now a record number of people aged 85 and over. This has an impact on the cost of pensions and health care.

### 4.1.6 Ethnic diversity

The UK population is ethnically diverse and changing rapidly, especially in large cities such as London. It is not always easy to get an exact picture of the ethnic origin of all the population. There are people in the UK with ethnic origins from all over the world. In surveys, the most common ethnic description chosen is white, which includes people of European, Australian, Canadian, New Zealand and American descent. Other significant groups are those of Asian, black and mixed descent.

### 4.1.7 An equal society

Within the UK, it is a legal requirement that men and women should not be discriminated against because of their gender or because they are, or are not, married. They have equal rights to work, own property, marry and divorce. If they are married, both parents are equally responsible for their children.

Women in Britain today make up about half of the workforce. On average, girls leave school with better qualifications than boys. More women than men study at university.

Employment opportunities for women are much greater than they were in the past. Women work in all sectors of the economy, and there are now more women in high-level positions than ever before, including senior managers in traditionally male-dominated occupations. Alongside this, men now work in more varied jobs than they did in the past.

It is no longer expected that women should stay at home and not work. Women often continue to work after having children. In many families today, both partners work and both share responsibility for childcare and household chores.

#### Check that you understand

- The capital cities of the UK
- What languages other than English are spoken in particular parts of the UK
- How the population of the UK has changed
- That the UK is an equal society and ethnically diverse
- The currency of the UK

### 4.1.5.1 人口老化

在英國，人口活得比以前更長。這有賴於生活水平提高和更好的醫療保健。現在 85 歲及以上的人數是歷年新高。這對養老金和醫療保健費用有重大影響。

### 4.1.6 種族多樣化

英國人口包含多元化種族並不斷變化，尤其是如倫敦等大城市。得到所有精確的人口種族血統來源並不是容易的事。

英國的人來自世界各地民族。在調查中，最常見的種族是白種人，其中包括歐洲、澳大利亞、加拿大、新西蘭和美國血統的人。其他大群體有亞裔、黑人和混合血統。

### 4.1.7 平等社會

在英國，法律規定男女也不應該因性別或是否已結婚而被歧視。他們有平等的權利工作、擁有財產、結婚和離婚。如果他們結婚了，雙方同樣有責任照顧他們的孩子。

女性在英國今天佔了大約勞動力的一半。平均而言，女孩以優於男生的資歷畢業。大學學生中，女性比例較男性多。

婦女的就業機會是遠遠優於往時。婦女在所有經濟行業工作，現在比以往任何時候有更多的女性在高級職位工作，包括在傳統上以男性為主的高級管理人員。除了這點，相比以往，現在的人在更多樣化的工作上幹活。

社會不再期望女性待在家裡沒有工作。女性有了孩子之後通常繼續工作。在許多今天的家庭，男女雙方同樣工作和分擔育兒及家務責任。

#### Check that you understand

- 英國的首都城市
- 英國的特定部分是用英語以外什麼的語言
- 英國的人口改變
- 英國是一個平等和種族多元化的社會
- 英國的貨幣

## 4.2 Religion

The UK is historically a Christian country. In the 2009 Citizenship Survey, 70% of people identified themselves as Christian. Much smaller proportions identified themselves as Muslim (4%), Hindu (2%), Sikh (1%), Jewish or Buddhist (both less than 0.5%), and 2% of people followed another religion. There are religious buildings for other religions all over the UK. This includes Islamic mosques, Hindu temples, Jewish synagogues, Sikh gurdwaras and Buddhist temples. However, everyone has the legal right to choose their religion, or to choose not to practise a religion. In the Citizenship Survey, 21% of people said that they had no religion.

### 4.2.1 Christian churches

In England, there is a constitutional link between Church and state. The official Church of the state is the Church of England (called the Anglican Church in other countries and the Episcopal Church in Scotland and the United States). It is a Protestant Church and has existed since the Reformation in the 1530s.

The monarch is the head of the Church of England. The spiritual leader of the Church of England is the Archbishop of Canterbury. The monarch has the right to select the Archbishop and other senior church officials, but usually the choice is made by the Prime Minister and a committee appointed by the Church. Several Church of England bishops sit in the House of Lords.

In Scotland, the national Church is the Church of Scotland, which is a Presbyterian Church. It is governed by ministers and elders. The chairperson of the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland is the Moderator, who is appointed for one year only and often speaks on behalf of that Church.

There is no established Church in Wales or Northern Ireland. Other Protestant Christian groups in the UK are Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians and Quakers. There are also other denominations of Christianity, the biggest of which is Roman Catholic.

## 4.2 宗教

英國歷史上是一個基督教國家。在 2009 年的公民意識調查，70% 的人認為自己是基督徒。很小的比例認定自己是穆斯林 (4%)，印度教 (2%)，錫克教 (1%)，猶太教或佛教 (均小於 0.5%)，而 2% 的人跟著另一個宗教。其他宗教的宗教建築遍布英國。這包括伊斯蘭教清真寺，印度教寺廟，猶太教會堂，錫克教謁和佛教寺廟。然而，每個人都有選擇自己的宗教，或選擇不體現一個宗教的合法權利。在公民意識調查，21% 的人表示，他們沒有宗教。

### 4.2.1 基督教教堂

在英國，教會與國家之間有憲法鏈接。國家的官方教會是英格蘭教會 (在其他國家被稱為聖公會教堂，在蘇格蘭和美國被稱為主教教堂)。這是一個新教教會，自 1530 年代宗教改革已經存在。

君主是英格蘭教會的領導。英國教會的精神領袖是坎特伯雷大主教。君主有選擇大主教和其他高級教會官員的權利，但通常決定是由首相和教會任命的委員會作出。幾位英格蘭教會的主教屬於上議院。

在蘇格蘭，國家的官方教會是蘇格蘭教會，這也是一個長老教會。它是由教士和長老治理。蘇格蘭教會的大會是由會議主席主持。這職位的任命時間為一年只，也經常為教會代言。

在威爾士或北愛爾蘭沒有已制定的教會。

在英國的其他基督教新教群體有浸信會，衛理公會，長老會和公誼會，也有基督教其他教派，其中最大的是羅馬天主教。

## 4.2.2 Patron saints' days

England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland each have a national saint, called a patron saint. Each saint has a special day:

- 1 March: St David's Day, Wales
- 17 March: St Patrick's Day, Northern Ireland
- 23 April: St George's Day, England
- 30 November: St Andrew's Day, Scotland.

Only Scotland and Northern Ireland have their patron saint's day as an official holiday (although in Scotland not all businesses and Offices will close). Events are held across Scotland, Northern Ireland and the rest of the country, especially where there are a lot of people of Scottish, Northern Irish and Irish heritage.

While the patron saints' days are no longer public holidays in England and Wales, they are still celebrated. Parades and small festivals are held all over the two countries.



*Westminster Abbey has been the coronation church since 1066 and is the final resting place of 17 monarchs*

### Check that you understand

- The different religions that are practiced in the UK
- That the Anglican Church, also known as the Church of England, is the Church of the state in England (the 'established Church')
- That other branches of the Christian Church also practise their faith in the UK without being linked to the state
- That other religions are practiced in the UK
- About the patron saints

## 4.2.2 主保聖徒日

英格蘭·蘇格蘭·威爾士和北愛爾蘭各有一個國家聖人·所謂的主保聖徒。每個聖人都有一個特殊的日子：

3月1日：聖大衛日·威爾士

3月17日：聖帕特里克節·北愛爾蘭

4月23日：聖喬治日·英格蘭

11月30日：聖安德魯日·蘇格蘭

只有蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭有的聖徒日是法定假日（雖然在蘇格蘭不是所有的企業和辦事處將休息）。慶祝活動在蘇格蘭·北愛爾蘭和該國其他地區舉行·特別是在有很多蘇格蘭·北愛爾蘭和愛爾蘭遺產的地方。

雖然聖徒日在英格蘭和威爾士不再是公眾假期·他們還是有慶祝·遊行和紀念活動遍布兩國。

自 1066 威斯敏斯特教堂一直是加冕教堂·也是 17 名君主的安息之地

### Check that you understand

- 關於主保聖徒日
- 英國的其他宗教
- 基督教會的其他分支也在沒有官方關係下實踐他們的信仰
- 被稱為英格蘭教會的聖公會是國家教會（即已制定的教會）
- 在英國不同的宗教

## 4.3 Customs and Traditions

### 4.3.1 The main Christian festivals

**Christmas Day**, 25 December, celebrates the birth of Jesus Christ. It is a public holiday. Many Christians go to church on Christmas Eve (24 December) or on Christmas Day itself.

Christmas is celebrated in a traditional way. People usually spend the day at home and eat a special meal, which often includes roast turkey, Christmas pudding and mince pies. They give gifts, send cards and decorate their houses. Christmas is a special time for children. Very young children believe that Father Christmas (also known as Santa Claus) brings them presents during the night before Christmas Day. Many people decorate a tree in their home.

*A typical Christmas Day meal*



**Boxing Day** is the day after Christmas Day and is a public holiday.

**Easter** takes place in March or April. It marks the death of Jesus Christ on Good Friday and his rising from the dead on Easter Sunday. Both Good Friday and the following Monday, called Easter Monday, are public holidays.

The 40 days before Easter are known as Lent. It is a time when Christians take time to reflect and prepare for Easter.

Traditionally, people would fast during this period and today many people will give something up, like a favourite food. The day before Lent starts is called Shrove Tuesday, or Pancake Day. People eat pancakes, which were traditionally made to use up foods such as eggs, fat and milk before fasting. Lent begins on Ash Wednesday. There are church services where Christians are marked with an ash cross on their forehead as a symbol of death and sorrow for sin.

Easter is also celebrated by people who are not religious. 'Easter eggs' are chocolate eggs often given as presents at Easter as a symbol of new life.

## 4.3 習俗和傳統

### 4.3.1 主要的基督教節日

12月25日聖誕節是慶祝耶穌基督的誕生。這是一個公眾假期。許多基督徒於平安夜(24日)或聖誕節當天去教堂。

聖誕節是以傳統方式慶祝。人們通常花一天時間在家裡吃一頓特別的晚餐，其中通常包括烤火雞、聖誕布丁和碎肉餡餅。他們送禮、寄賀卡和裝飾他們的房子。聖誕節對於兒童是一個特殊的時刻。年幼的兒童相信聖誕之父(也稱為聖誕老人)會在聖誕節前一晚給他們帶來禮物。許多人在他們的家裝飾一棵樹。

傳統的聖誕大餐

節禮日是聖誕節後的一天，是公眾假期。

復活節是在三月或四月。它標誌著前一個星期五耶穌基督受難日和祂在復活節星期天從死裡復活。耶穌受難日和被稱為復活節後星期一的接下來的星期一是公眾假期。

復活節前40天被稱為四旬期。這是基督徒自省和為復活節做準備的時候。傳統上，人們會在此期間禁食，今天很多人都會放棄一些東西，給一種最喜歡的食物。四旬期開始的前一天稱為懺悔星期二，或烤餅節。人吃煎餅以在禁食前用盡蛋類、脂肪和牛奶等煎餅食材。四旬期於聖灰星期三開始。(大齋首日，又名聖灰禮儀日、聖灰星期三、聖灰日、灰日，是基督教會年曆的大齋期(四旬期)之起始日。)有些教會的基督徒會在他們的額頭標有灰十字架以象徵死亡和罪疚悲傷。

沒有宗教信仰的人也會慶祝復活節。「復活節彩蛋」是在復活節送給別人作為禮物，作為新生活象徵的巧克力蛋。

### 4.3.2 Other religious festivals

**Diwali** normally falls in October or November and lasts for five days. It is often called the Festival of Lights. It is celebrated by Hindus and Sikhs. It celebrates the victory of good over evil and the gaining of knowledge. There are different stories about how the festival came about. There is a famous celebration of Diwali in Leicester.



Diwali is popularly known as the Festival of lights

**Hannukah** is in November or December and is celebrated for eight days. It is to remember the Jews' struggle for religious freedom. On each day of the festival a candle is lit on a stand of eight candles (called a menorah) to remember the story of the festival, where oil that should have lasted only a day did so for eight.

**Eid al-Fitr** celebrates the end of Ramadan, when Muslims have fasted for a month. They thank Allah for giving them the strength to complete the fast. The date when it takes place changes every year. Muslims attend special services and meals.

**Eid ul Adha** remembers that the prophet Ibrahim was willing to sacrifice his son when God ordered him to. It reminds Muslims of their own commitment to God. Many Muslims sacrifice an animal to eat during this festival. In Britain this has to be done in a slaughterhouse.

**Vaisakhi** (also spelled Baisakhi) is a Sikh festival which celebrates the founding of the Sikh community known as the Khalsa. It is celebrated on 14 April each year with parades, dancing and singing.

### 4.3.2 其他宗教節日

**排燈節** 通常是在十月或十一月，持續五天。它通常被稱為燈的節。印度教徒和錫克教徒會慶祝此日。它慶祝善良戰勝邪惡和獲取知識。對於節日由來有著不同的故事。在萊斯特有排燈節的著名慶祝。

排燈節被稱為燈的節

**光明節** 是在 11 月或 12 月慶祝一共八天。這是紀念猶太人為宗教自由而抗爭。在節日的每一天，人們會點燃蠟燭座內（所謂的燈檯）八個蠟燭以記住節日的故事。其中的油只會足夠維持八個蠟燭點燃一天。

**開齋節** 慶祝穆斯林禁食一個月的齋月結束。他們感謝真主給他們力量完成禁食。每年，它的日期也有變化。穆斯林參加特殊慶祝和聚餐。

**宰牲節** 紀念先知易卜拉欣甘願跟從上帝命令犧牲他的兒子。這提醒穆斯林對神的忠誠。這個節日期間許多穆斯林會犧牲一隻動物並把其進食。在英國這必須在屠宰場進行。

**錫克教光明節** 是錫克教節日以慶祝被稱為卡爾薩的錫克教社區成立。每年的 4 月 14 日，人們會以巡遊，跳舞和唱歌慶祝。

### 4.3.3 Other festivals and traditions

**New Year**, 1 January, is a public holiday. People usually celebrate on the night of 31 December (called New Year's Eve). In Scotland, 31 December is called Hogmanay and 2 January is also a public holiday. For some Scottish people, Hogmanay is a bigger holiday than Christmas.

**Valentine's Day**, 14 February, is when lovers exchange cards and gifts. Sometimes people send anonymous cards to someone they secretly admire.

**April Fool's Day**, 1 April, is a day when people play jokes on each other until midday. The television and newspapers often have stories that are April Fool jokes.

**Mothering Sunday** (or Mother's Day) is the Sunday three weeks before Easter. Children send cards or buy gifts for their mothers.

**Father's Day** is the third Sunday in June. Children send cards or buy gifts for their fathers.

**Halloween**, 31 October, is an ancient festival and has roots in the pagan festival to mark the beginning of winter. Young people will often dress up in frightening costumes to play 'trick or treat'. People give them treats to stop them playing tricks on them. A lot of people carve lanterns out of pumpkins and put a candle inside.

**Bonfire Night**, 5 November, is an occasion when people in Great Britain set off fireworks at home or in special displays. The origin of this celebration was an event in 1605, when a group of Catholics led by Guy Fawkes failed in their plan to kill the Protestant king with a bomb in the Houses of Parliament.

**Remembrance Day**, 11 November, commemorates those who died fighting for the UK and its allies. Originally it commemorated the dead of the First World War, which ended on 11 November 1918. People wear poppies (the red flower found on the battlefields of the First World War). At 11.00 am there is a two-minute silence and wreaths are laid at the Cenotaph in Whitehall, London.

### 4.3.3 其他節日和傳統

1月1日**新年**是公眾假期。人們通常於12月31日的晚上(稱為除夕)慶祝。在蘇格蘭,12月31日被稱為除夕,1月2日也是公眾假期。對於一些蘇格蘭人民,除夕是一個比聖誕節更大的節日。

2月14日**情人節**是戀人交換心意卡和禮物的日子。有時人們會發送匿名卡給暗戀對象。

4月1日**愚人節**人們會捉弄對方直到正午。在電視和報紙上經常有報導是愚人節的玩笑。

**母親星期天**(或母親節)是復活節前三個星期的星期日。孩子送卡或買禮物給他們的母親。

**父親節**是六月第三個星期日。孩子送卡或買禮物給他們的父親。

10月31日**萬聖節**是一個古老的節日,源於一個標誌冬季開始的異教節日。年輕人往往會以嚇人打扮處到玩「不給糖就搗蛋」。

人們給他們糖果以阻止年輕人捉弄他們。很多人會把蠟燭放在南瓜裡面作為燈籠。

11月5日**營火之夜**是英國人們在在家中或特殊場合放煙花之日。這次慶祝活動的起源於1605年,當年以蓋伊·福克斯為首的一群天主教徒計劃用炸彈在議會殺害信奉新教的國王,最終失敗。

11月11日**紀念日**是紀念那些為英國及其盟國戰死的人。原本它是紀念於1918年11月11日結束的第一次世界大戰的死難者。人們穿著罌粟花(在第一次世界大戰戰場發現的紅花)。上午11時正,有兩分鐘的默哀,花圈會放在倫敦白廳和平紀念碑。



Unveiled in 1920, the Cenotaph is the centerpiece to the Remembrance Day service

#### 4.3.4 Bank holidays

As well as those mentioned previously, there are other public holidays each year called bank holidays, when banks and many other businesses are closed for the day. These are of no religious significance. They are at the beginning of May, in late May or early June, and in August. In Northern Ireland, the anniversary of the Battle of the Boyne in July is also a public holiday.

##### Check that you understand

- The main Christian festivals that are celebrated in the UK
- Other religious festivals that are important in the UK
- Some of the other events that are celebrated in the UK
- What a bank holiday is

1920 年揭幕，和平紀念碑是紀念日的重要元素

#### 4.3.4 銀行假期

除了前面提到的那些外，還有其他公眾假期，銀行和其他許多企業都休市一天每年所謂的銀行假日。這些假日沒有宗教意義。他們在五月初，在五月底或六月初，及在八月。在北愛爾蘭，博因戰役的紀念日在 7 月，這天也是公眾假期。

##### Check that you understand

- 在英國主要的基督教節日
- 在英國其他重要的宗教節日
- 在英國會有慶祝的其他事件
- 什麼是銀行假期



## 4.4 Sport

Sports of all kinds play an important part in many people's lives. There are several sports that are particularly popular in the UK. Many sporting events take place at major stadiums such as Wembley Stadium in London and the Millennium Stadium in Cardiff.

Local governments and private companies provide sports facilities such as swimming pools, tennis courts, football pitches, dry ski slopes and gymnasiums. Many famous sports, including cricket, football, lawn tennis, golf and rugby, began in Britain.

The UK has hosted the Olympic Games on three occasions: 1908, 1948 and 2012. The main Olympic site for the 2012 Games was in Stratford, East London. The British team was very successful, across a wide range of Olympic sports, finishing third in the medal table.

The Paralympic Games for 2012 were also hosted in London. The Paralympics have their origin in the work of Dr Sir Ludwig Guttmann, a German refugee, at the Stoke Mandeville hospital in Buckinghamshire. Dr Guttmann developed new methods of treatment for people with spinal injuries and encouraged patients to take part in exercise and sport.

### 4.4.1 Notable British sportsmen and women

**Sir Roger Bannister (1929–)** was the first man in the world to run a mile in under four minutes, in 1954.

**Sir Jackie Stewart (1939–)** is a Scottish former racing driver who won the Formula 1 world championship three times.

**Bobby Moore (1941–93)** captained the English football team that won the World Cup in 1966.

**Sir Ian Botham (1955–)** captained the English cricket team and holds a number of English Test cricket records, both for batting and for bowling.

**Jayne Torvill (1957–)** and Christopher Dean (1958–) won gold medals for ice dancing at the Olympic Games in 1984 and in four consecutive world championships.

**Sir Steve Redgrave (1962–)** won gold medals in rowing in five consecutive Olympic Games and is one of Britain's greatest Olympians.

## 4.4 體育

各類體育在許多人的生活中扮演重要部分。在英國有幾種運動是特別受歡迎。許多體育賽事都在大型體育場館舉行，例如倫敦的溫布萊球場和加的夫的千禧體育場。

地方政府和私人公司提供的體育設施，如游泳池，網球場，足球場，乾滑雪場和體育館。許多著名運動，包括板球，足球，草地網球，高爾夫球和橄欖球也源於英國。

英國曾舉辦過奧運會三次：1908年，1948年和2012年。2012奧運會主要地點為倫敦東部斯特拉特福德。英國隊在各種奧林匹克運動中都非常成功，在獎牌榜上排名第三。

2012殘奧會也是在倫敦舉辦。殘奧會是由德國難民路德維·格特曼爵士在白金漢郡斯托克曼德維爾醫院開始。格特曼開發治療脊髓損傷的新方法，並鼓勵患者參加鍛煉和運動。

### 4.4.1 著名英國運動員

羅傑·班尼斯特爵士 (1929 -) 是於 1954 年第一個在世界上以不到四分鐘跑完一英里的人。

傑基·斯圖爾特爵士 (1939 -) 是一位蘇格蘭前賽車手，他曾三次贏得了 F1 世界冠軍。

鮑比·摩爾 (1941 - 1993) 是英格蘭足球隊於 1966 年贏得世界杯的隊長。

伊恩·博瑟姆爵士 (1955 -) 英國板球隊隊長，擁有一些板球擊球和投球記錄。

傑恩·托維爾 (1957 年 -) 和克里斯托弗·迪恩 (1958 -) 獲得了 1984 年奧運會冰上舞蹈金牌，並曾連續四次奪得世界冠軍。

史蒂夫·雷德格雷夫爵士 (1962 -) 在連續五屆奧運會獲得了賽艇金牌的，是英國最偉大的奧運選手之一。

**Baroness Tanni-Grey Thompson (1969–)** is an athlete who uses a wheelchair and won 16 Paralympic medals, including 11 gold medals, in races over five Paralympic Games. She won the London Marathon six times and broke a total of 30 world records.

**Dame Kelly Holmes (1970–)** won two gold medals for running in the 2004 Olympic Games. She has held a number of British and European records.

**Dame Ellen MacArthur (1976–)** is a yachtswoman and in 2004 became the fastest person to sail around the world singlehanded.

**Sir Chris Hoy (1976–)** is a Scottish cyclist who has won six gold and one silver Olympic medals. He has also won 11 world championship titles.

**David Weir (1979–)** is a Paralympian who uses a wheelchair and has won six gold medals over two Paralympic Games. He has also won the London Marathon six times.

**Bradley Wiggins (1980–)** is a cyclist. In 2012, he became the first Briton to win the Tour de France. He has won seven Olympic medals, including gold medals in the 2004, 2008 and 2012 Olympic Games.

**Mo Farah (1983–)** is a British distance runner, born in Somalia. He won gold medals in the 2012 Olympics for the 5,000 and 10,000 metres and is the first Briton to win the Olympic gold medal in the 10,000 metres.

**Jessica Ennis (1986–)** is an athlete. She won the 2012 Olympic gold medal in the heptathlon, which includes seven different track and field events. She also holds a number of British athletics records.

**Andy Murray (1987–)** is a Scottish tennis player who in 2012 won the men's singles in the US Open. He is the first British man to win a singles title in a Grand Slam tournament since 1936. In the same year, he won Olympic gold and silver medals and was runner-up in the men's singles at Wimbledon.

**Ellie Simmonds (1994–)** is a Paralympian who won gold medals for swimming at the 2008 and 2012 Paralympic Games and holds a number of world records. She was the youngest member of the British team at the 2008 Games.

譚妮·葛雷·湯普森女男爵 (1969 年 -) 是一名使用輪椅的運動員，在五次殘奧會贏得了 16 個殘奧會獎牌，包括 11 枚金牌。她贏得了倫敦馬拉松賽六次，打破了共 30 項世界紀錄。

凱莉·霍爾姆斯女爵士 (1970 -) 在 2004 年奧運會上奪得兩枚田徑金牌。她曾擁有多項英國和歐洲紀錄。

艾倫·麥克阿瑟女爵士 (1976 -) 是一名帆船運動員，並於 2004 年成為世界上最快獨力航行橫跨世界的人。

克里斯·霍伊爵士 (1976 -) 是一位蘇格蘭單車手，曾贏得了六金一銀奧運獎牌。他還獲得了 11 個世界冠軍頭銜。

大衛·威爾 (1979 -) 是一名使用輪椅的殘奧運動員，兩次參加殘奧會奪得六面金牌。他還六次贏得了倫敦馬拉松賽。

布拉德利·威金斯爵士 (1980 -) 是名單車手。2012 年，他成為第一個英國人贏得環法單車賽。他已經贏得了七枚奧運獎牌，包括在 2004 年、2008 年和 2012 年奧運會的金牌。

米·法拉 (1983 -) 是出生於索馬里的英國長跑運動員。他在 2012 年的奧運會上獲得 5000 和 10000 米金牌，是第一個在 10000 米贏得奧運金牌的英國人。

傑西卡·恩尼斯 (1980 -) 是一名體操選手。她贏得了 2012 奧運七項全能金牌，其中包括七個不同的賽事。她還擁有多項英國體操紀錄。

安迪·穆雷 (1987 -) 是一位蘇格蘭的網球選手，在 2012 年美國公開賽奪得男子單打冠軍。他是自 1936 年大滿貫賽事以來第一個贏得單打冠軍的英國男子。同年，他獲得了奧運會金牌和銀牌，並在在溫布頓 (見第 89 頁) 男子單打獲得亞軍。

艾莉·西蒙茲 (1994 -) 是一名殘奧會選手，在 2008 和 2012 殘奧會游泳贏得了金牌，並擁有多項世界紀錄。她是英國隊在 2008 年奧運會中最年輕的成員。

## 4.4.2 Cricket

Cricket originated in England and is now played in many countries. Games can last up to five days but still result in a draw! The idiosyncratic nature of the game and its complex laws are said to reflect the best of the British character and sense of fair play. You may come across expressions such as 'rain stopped play', 'batting on a sticky wicket', 'playing a straight bat', 'bowled a googly' or 'it's just not cricket', which have passed into everyday usage. The most famous competition is the Ashes, which is a series of Test matches played between England and Australia.



*Cricket is one of the many famous sports originating in Britain*

## 4.4.3 Football

Football is the UK's most popular sport. It has a long history in the UK and the first professional football clubs were formed in the late 19th century.

England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland each have separate leagues in which clubs representing different towns and cities compete. The English Premier League attracts a huge international audience. Many of the best players in the world play in the Premier League. Many UK teams also compete in competitions such as the UEFA (Union of European Football Associations) Champions League, against other teams from Europe. Most towns and cities have a professional club and people take great pride in supporting their home team. There can be great rivalry between different football clubs and among fans.

Each country in the UK also has its own national team that competes with other national teams across the world in tournaments such as the FIFA (Fédération Internationale de Football Association) World Cup and the UEFA European Football Championships. England's only international tournament victory was at the World Cup of 1966, hosted in the UK.

Football is also a popular sport to play in many local communities, with people playing amateur games every week in parks all over the UK.

## 4.4.2 板球

板球起源於英國，現在在許多國家也盛行。比賽可以持續長達五天但仍保持平局！獨特的比賽和其複雜的規則正好反映英國人的性格和公平競賽的精神。很多術語已經傳遞到日常使用。最有名的競爭是灰燼杯，是一系列英國和澳洲之間的比賽。

板球是其中一項源於英國的著名運動

## 4.4.3 足球

足球是英國最流行的運動。它在英國有著悠久的歷史，第一個職業足球球會於 19 世紀末期形成。

英格蘭、蘇格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭各有不同的聯賽，不同的球會代表不同的城鎮和城市。英超聯賽吸引了大量的國際觀眾。很多世界上優秀的球員也在英超聯賽踢球。

許多英國球隊也在大型比賽，如 UEFA (歐洲足球協會聯盟) 歐洲冠軍聯賽與歐洲其他球隊對陣。大多數城鎮和城市都有職業的球會，人們為支持他們的主隊感到非常自豪。不同的球會和球迷之間可以有的巨大競爭。

在英國，每個國家也有自己的國家隊，與世界各地國家隊比賽，如 FIFA (國際足球協會) 世界杯和歐洲足球錦標賽。英格蘭唯一勝出的國際冠軍是 1966 年世界杯，該項賽事由英國主辦。

足球也是一種許多地方社區的流行的運動，每星期也有業餘比賽在遍布全英國的公園進行。

#### 4.4.4 Rugby

Rugby originated in England in the early 19th century and is very popular in the UK today. There are two different types of rugby, which have different rules: union and league. Both have separate leagues and national teams in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland (who play with the Irish Republic). Teams from all countries compete in a range of competitions. The most famous rugby union competition is the Six Nations Championship between England, Ireland, Scotland, Wales, France and Italy. The Super League is the most well-known rugby league (club) competition.

#### 4.4.5 Horse racing

There is a very long history of horse racing in Britain, with evidence of events taking place as far back as Roman times. The sport has a long association with royalty. There are racecourses all over the UK. Famous horse-racing events include: Royal Ascot, a five-day race meeting in Berkshire attended by members of the Royal Family; the Grand National at Aintree near Liverpool; and the Scottish Grand National at Ayr. There is a National Horseracing Museum in Newmarket, Suffolk.

#### 4.4.6 Golf

The modern game of golf can be traced back to 15th century Scotland. It is a popular sport played socially as well as professionally. There are public and private golf courses all over the UK. St Andrews in Scotland is known as the home of golf. The Open Championship is the only 'Major' tournament held outside the United States. It is hosted by a different golf course every year.

#### 4.4.7 Tennis

Modern tennis evolved in England in the late 19th century. The first tennis club was founded in Leamington Spa in 1872. The most famous tournament hosted in Britain is The Wimbledon Championships, which takes place each year at the All England Lawn Tennis and Croquet Club. It is the oldest tennis tournament in the world and the only 'Grand Slam' event played on grass.

#### 4.4.4 欖球

欖球起源於英國 19 世紀初，今天在英國非常流行。有兩種不同類型的橄欖球，而有不同的規則：聯合式和聯盟式。兩者在英格蘭、威爾士、蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭（與愛爾蘭共和國共同參賽）分別有各自的聯賽和國家隊。來自所有國家的球隊在一系列的比賽中競爭。最著名的欖球聯盟比賽是英格蘭、愛爾蘭、蘇格蘭、威爾士、法國和意大利之間的六國錦標賽。超級聯賽是最知名的欖球聯賽（俱樂部間比賽）。

#### 4.4.5 賽馬

賽馬在英國的歷史非常悠久，早在羅馬時代已有它的足跡。這項運動與皇室有深遠的關係。賽馬場遍佈全英國。著名的賽馬活動包括：皇家雅士谷，一個為期五天在伯克郡的賽馬大會，有皇室成員出席在利物浦附近安特里的國家大賽和在艾爾的蘇格蘭國家大賽。在紐馬克、薩福克有一個國家賽馬博物館。

#### 4.4.6 高爾夫

現代高爾夫比賽可以追溯到 15 世紀的蘇格蘭。這是一項在社交場合以及專業比賽都十分流行的運動。公共和私人高爾夫球場遍佈英國。蘇格蘭的聖安德魯斯被稱為高爾夫的故鄉。

公開錦標賽是在美國以外地區唯一的大比賽。每年它是由不同的高爾夫球場舉辦。

#### 4.4.7 網球

現代網球運動在 19 世紀後期於英國發展。第一個網球俱樂部在 1872 年於利明頓溫泉成立。英國最著名的比賽是溫布頓網球錦標賽，每年全英草地網球和門球俱樂部舉行。它是世界上最古老的網球賽事，並是唯一在草地上的「大滿貫」賽事。

## 4.4.8 Water sports

Sailing continues to be popular in the UK, reflecting our maritime heritage. A British sailor, Sir Francis Chichester, was the first person to sail single-handed around the world, in 1966/67. Two years later, Sir Robin Knox-Johnston became the first person to do this without stopping. Many sailing events are held throughout the UK, the most famous of which is at Cowes on the Isle of Wight. Rowing is also popular, both as a leisure activity and as a competitive sport. There is a popular yearly race on the Thames between Oxford and Cambridge Universities.

## 4.4.9 Motor sports

There is a long history of motor sport in the UK, for both cars and motor cycles. Motor-car racing in the UK started in 1902. The UK continues to be a world leader in the development and manufacture of motor-sport technology. A Formula 1 Grand Prix event is held in the UK each year and a number of British Grand Prix drivers have won the Formula 1 World Championship. Recent British winners include Damon Hill, Lewis Hamilton and Jensen Button.

## 4.4.10 Skiing

Skiing is increasingly popular in the UK. Many people go abroad to ski and there are also dry ski slopes throughout the UK. Skiing on snow may also be possible during the winter. There are five ski centres in Scotland, as well as Europe's longest dry ski slope near Edinburgh.

## 4.4.8 水上運動

帆船仍然在英國流行，突顯出我們的海洋遺產。在 1966 / 67 年，英國水手弗朗西斯·奇切斯特爵士是第一人單人揚帆橫越世界各地，橫過開普敦的好望角（南非）和合恩角（南美洲）。兩年後，羅賓·諾克斯·約翰斯頓爵士成為了第一個在沒有停止下完成此舉的人。許多帆船賽事在英國舉行，其中最有名的是在懷特島的考斯。

賽艇也很受歡迎，無論是作為一種休閒活動或作為一項競技運動。每年牛津大學和劍橋大學之間在泰晤士河上有一項流行的比賽。

## 4.4.9 賽車

賽車在英國歷史悠久，無論是汽車或電單車。英國的賽車開始於 1902 年。英國仍然是其中一個開發和製造賽車技術的世界領導者。一級方程式大獎賽事件每年在英國舉行，亦一些英國大獎賽車手贏得 F1 世界冠軍。最近英國的獲獎者包括達蒙·希爾、劉易斯·漢密爾頓和簡森·巴頓。

## 4.4.10 滑雪

滑雪在英國越來越受歡迎。很多人去國外滑雪，英國各地也有乾滑雪場。冬季期間也可以雪上滑雪。在蘇格蘭有 5 個滑雪中心，愛丁堡附近更有歐洲最長的人造滑雪場。

## 4.5 Arts and Culture

### 4.5.1 Music

Music is an important part of British culture, with a rich and varied heritage. It ranges from classical music to modern pop. There are many different venues and musical events that take place across the UK.

The Proms is an eight-week summer season of orchestral classical music that takes place in various venues, including the Royal Albert Hall in London. It has been organised by the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC) since 1927. The Last Night of the Proms is the most well-known concert and (along with others in the series) is broadcast on television.

Classical music has been popular in the UK for many centuries. **Henry Purcell (1659–95)** was the organist at Westminster Abbey. He wrote church music, operas and other pieces, and developed a British style distinct from that elsewhere in Europe. He continues to be influential on British composers.

The German-born composer **George Frederick Handel (1695–1759)** spent many years in the UK and became a British citizen in 1727. He wrote the *Water Music* for King George I and *Music for the Royal Fireworks* for his son, George II. Both these pieces continue to be very popular. Handel also wrote an oratorio, *Messiah*, which is sung regularly by choirs, often at Easter time.

More recently, important composers include **Gustav Holst (1874–1934)**, whose work includes *The Planets*, a suite of pieces themed around the planets of the solar system. He adapted *Jupiter*, part of the Planets suite, as the tune for *I vow to thee my country*, a popular hymn in British churches.

**Sir Edward Elgar (1857–1934)** was born in Worcester, England. His best-known work is probably the *Pomp and Circumstance Marches*. *March No 1 (Land of Hope and Glory)* is usually played at the Last Night of the Proms at the Royal Albert Hall.

**Ralph Vaughan Williams (1872–1958)** wrote music for orchestras and choirs. He was strongly influenced by traditional English folk music.

**Sir William Walton (1902–83)** wrote a wide range of music, from film scores to opera. He wrote marches for the coronations of King George VI and Queen Elizabeth II but his best-known works are probably *Façade*, which became a ballet, and *Balthazar's Feast*, which is intended to be sung by a large choir.

**Benjamin Britten (1913–76)** is best known for his operas, which include *Peter Grimes* and *Billy Budd*. He also wrote *A Young Person's Guide to the Orchestra*, which is based on a piece of music by Purcell and introduces the listener to the various different sections of an orchestra. He founded the Aldeburgh festival in Suffolk, which continues to be a popular music event of international importance.

## 4.5 藝術與文化

### 4.5.1 音樂

音樂是英國文化的重要部分，是種豐富多樣的文化遺產。它的範圍從古典音樂到現代流行音樂。在英國各地有許多不同的音樂會場和音樂活動。

逍遙音樂節是為期八週的夏季管弦樂古典音樂盛會，於不同地點舉行，包括在倫敦的英國皇家阿爾伯特音樂廳。自 1927 年以來已由英國廣播公司 (BBC) 舉辦。最後一晚的逍遙音樂節是最知名的音樂會，並 (與其他系列同樣) 會在是在電視上播出。

古典音樂於英國已經盛行了許多世紀。**亨利·珀塞爾 (1659–1695)** 是在西敏宮的管風琴手。他編製教堂音樂、歌劇等作品，並制定了與歐洲其他地方截然不同的英倫風格。他仍然是有影響力的英國作曲家。

德國出生的作曲家**喬治·弗雷德里克·亨德爾 (1685 – 1759)** 在英國生活多年，在 1727 年成為英國公民。他為國王喬治一世編寫了《水上音樂》，又為他的兒子喬治二世編寫了《皇家煙火》。這兩件作品仍是非常受歡迎。亨德爾亦寫了一個清唱劇《彌賽亞》。這劇經常出現在合唱團演出，尤其在復活節期間。

最近，重要的作曲家包括**古斯塔夫·霍爾斯特 (1874–1934)**，其作品包括圍繞太陽系的行星為主題的《行星》。他改編《行星》的一部分《木星》，作為在英國教堂流行的讚美詩《我向妳起誓，我親愛的祖國》的曲調。

**愛德華·埃爾加爵士 (1857 – 1934)** 出生在英格蘭伍斯特。他最知名的作品可能是《威風凜凜進行曲》。進行曲 1 號《希望與榮耀的土地》通常於最後一晚的逍遙音樂會在皇家阿爾伯特音樂廳被演奏。

**拉爾夫·沃恩·威廉斯 (1872 – 1958)** 為樂團和合唱團寫音樂。他深受傳統英國民間音樂的影響。

**威廉·沃頓爵士 (1902 – 1983)** 寫了各種各樣的音樂，從電影配樂到歌劇。他為英王喬治六世和女王伊麗莎白二世的加冕典禮寫進行曲，但他最著名的作品可能是成為一個芭蕾舞曲的《立面》，和以大型唱詩班演唱的《巴爾薩澤的盛宴》。

**本傑明·布里頓 (1913–1976)** 最出名的是他的歌劇，其中包括《彼得·格蘭姆斯和比利·巴德》。他還寫了《青少年管絃樂隊指南》，這是基於一首賽爾的音樂，並向觀眾展示管弦樂隊的各個不同部分。他在薩福克創辦的奧爾德堡音樂節，仍然是國際重要的流行音樂盛會。



### *The Royal Albert Hall is the venue for the Last Night of the Proms*

Other types of popular music, including folk music, jazz, pop and music, have flourished in Britain since the 20th century. Britain has had an impact on popular music around the world, due to the wide use of the English language, the UK's cultural links with many countries, and British capacity for invention and innovation. Since the 1960s, British pop music has made one of the most important cultural contributions to life in the UK. Bands including The Beatles and The Rolling Stones continue to have an influence on music both here and abroad. British pop music has continued to innovate – for example, the Punk movement of the late 1970s, and the trend towards boy and girl bands in the 1990s.

There are many large venues that host music events throughout the year, such as: Wembley Stadium; The O2 in Greenwich, south-east London; and the Scottish Exhibition and Conference Centre (SECC) in Glasgow.

Festival season takes place across the UK every summer, with major events in various locations. Famous festivals include Glastonbury, the Isle of Wight Festival and the V Festival. Many bands and solo artists, both well-known and up-and-coming, perform at these events.

The National Eisteddfod of Wales is an annual cultural festival which includes music, dance, art and original performances largely in Welsh. It includes a number of important competitions for Welsh poetry.

The Mercury Music Prize is awarded each September for the best album from the UK and Ireland. The Brit Awards is an annual event that gives awards in a range of categories, such as best British group and best British solo artist.

### *皇家阿爾伯特音樂廳是最後一晚的逍遙音樂會地點*

自 20 世紀，其他類型的流行音樂，包括民間音樂，爵士樂，流行音樂和搖滾音樂，也於英國發展起來。由於廣泛使用英語，和英國與許多國家的文化聯繫，以及英國發明和創新的能力，使英國對世界各地的流行音樂產生影響。

自 1960 年代，英國流行音樂成為英國最重要的文化貢獻之一。樂隊包括披頭士和滾石樂隊繼續影響國內和國外的音樂。英國流行音樂的不斷創新 – 例如，1970 年代末的朋克運動，以及 1990 年代男和女樂隊湧現的趨勢。

很多大型的場地經常主辦音樂活動，如：溫布萊大球場在倫敦東南部格林威治的 O2，和在格拉斯哥的蘇格蘭展覽會議中心 (SECC)。

每年夏天，音樂節發遍佈英國不同地點，其中幾個重大節目在數個地方舉行。著名的節日包括格拉斯頓伯裡，懷特島音樂節和 V 音樂節。許多知名的和嶄露頭角的樂隊和獨立表演者都會在這些活動中演出。

威爾士國家藝術節是一年一度的文化節，其中包括以威爾士語為主的音樂，舞蹈，藝術和原創表演。它包括了數個威爾士詩歌的重要比賽。

每年九月，水星音樂獎都會授予英國和愛爾蘭最好的一張專輯。全英音樂獎是一年一度的活動，包括一系列的獎項類別，如最佳英國組合和最佳英國獨唱歌手的。

## 4.5.2 Theatre

There are theatres in most towns and cities throughout the UK, ranging from the large to the small. They are an important part of local communities and often show both professional and amateur productions. London's West End, also known as 'Theatreland', is particularly well known. *The Mousetrap*, a murder-mystery play by Dame Agatha Christie, has been running in the West End since 1952 and has had the longest initial run of any show in history.

There is also a strong tradition of musical theatre in the UK. In the 19th century, Gilbert and Sullivan wrote comic operas, often making fun of popular culture and politics. These operas include *HMS Pinafore*, *The Pirates of Penzance* and *The Mikado*. Gilbert and Sullivan's work is still often staged by professional and amateur groups. More recently, Andrew Lloyd Webber has written the music for shows which have been popular throughout the world, including, in collaboration with Tim Rice, *Jesus Christ Superstar* and *Evita*, and also *Cats* and *The Phantom of the Opera*.

One British tradition is the pantomime. Many theatres produce a pantomime at Christmas time. They are based on fairy stories and are light-hearted plays with music and comedy, enjoyed by family audiences. One of the traditional characters is the Dame, a woman played by a man. There is often also a pantomime horse or cow played by two actors in the same costume.

The Edinburgh Festival takes place in Edinburgh, Scotland, every summer. It is a series of different arts and cultural festivals, with the biggest and most well-known being the Edinburgh Festival Fringe ('the Fringe'). The Fringe is a showcase of mainly theatre and comedy performances. It often shows experimental work.

The Laurence Olivier Awards take place annually at different venues in London. There are a variety of categories, including best director, best actor and best actress. The awards are named after the British actor Sir Laurence Olivier, later Lord Olivier, who was best known for his roles in various Shakespeare plays.

## 4.5.2 劇院

英國大多數城鎮和城市也有大大小小的劇院。他們是當地社區的重要組成部分，並常常有專業和業餘製作。倫敦的西區，也被稱為「劇院區」，是眾所周知的地點。由女爵士阿加莎·克里斯蒂所寫，有關一宗謀殺案的《捕鼠器》，自1952年一直在倫敦西區上演至今，並是史上最長壽的演出。

音樂劇在英國也有優良傳統。在19世紀，吉爾伯特和沙利文常常使流行文化和政治為題寫喜劇。這些劇目包括《皮納福號軍艦》、《班戰斯的海盜》與《天皇》。吉爾伯特和沙利文的工作仍經常由專業和業餘團體上演。比較近年的安德魯·勞埃德·韋伯為受歡迎演出寫音樂，與蒂姆·萊斯合作的作品包括在《萬世巨星》和《艾薇塔》，同時也包括《貓》和《歌劇院的幽靈》的曲目。

其中一個英國傳統是童話劇。許多劇院在聖誕節的時候製作童話劇。它們是基於童話故事，包括音樂和幽默的輕鬆愉快的戲劇，適合家庭觀眾欣賞。其中一個傳統角色是由男扮女演出的女爵士，同時也有一隻馬或牛，分別由兩個演員以同一款服裝扮演。

愛丁堡藝術節每到夏天在蘇格蘭的愛丁堡舉行。它是一系列不同的文化藝術節，最大和最知名的是愛丁堡國際藝穗節（藝穗節）。藝穗節主要是戲劇和喜劇表演的展示。它常常有實驗性演出上演。

勞倫斯·奧利弗頒獎禮每年在倫敦不同地點舉行。多種獎項類別包括最佳導演、最佳男主角和最佳女主角獎。該獎項是以英國演員勞倫斯·奧利弗爵士命名，他最著名的是在各種莎士比亞作品的演出。



## 4.5.3 Art

During the Middle Ages, most art had a religious theme, particularly wall paintings in churches and illustrations in religious books. Much of this was lost after the Protestant Reformation but wealthy families began to collect other paintings and sculptures. Many of the painters working in Britain in the 16th and 17th centuries were from abroad – for example, Hans Holbein and Sir Anthony Van Dyck. British artists, particularly those painting portraits and landscapes, became well known from the 18th century onwards.

Works by British and international artists are displayed in galleries across the UK. Some of the most well-known galleries are The National Gallery, Tate Britain and Tate Modern in London, the National Museum in Cardiff, and the National Gallery of Scotland in Edinburgh.

The Turner Prize was established in 1984 and celebrates contemporary art. It was named after Joseph Turner. Four works are shortlisted every year and shown at Tate Britain before the winner is announced. The Turner Prize is recognised as one of the most prestigious visual art awards in Europe. Previous winners include Damien Hirst and Richard Wright.

### 4.5.3.1 Notable British artists

**Thomas Gainsborough (1727–88)** was a portrait painter who often painted people in country or garden scenery.

**David Allan (1744–96)** was a Scottish painter who was best known for painting portraits. One of his most famous works is called *The Origin of Painting*.

**Joseph Turner (1775–1851)** was an influential landscape painter in a modern style. He is considered the artist who raised the profile of landscape painting.

**John Constable (1776–1837)** was a landscape painter most famous for his works of Dedham Vale on the Suffolk–Essex border in the east of England.

**The Pre-Raphaelites** were an important group of artists in the second half of the 19th century. They painted detailed pictures on religious or literary themes in bright colours. The group included Holman Hunt, Dante Gabriel Rossetti and Sir John Millais.

**Sir John Lavery (1856–1941)** was a very successful Northern Irish portrait painter. His work included painting the Royal Family.

**Henry Moore (1898–1986)** was an English sculptor and artist. He is best known for his large bronze abstract sculptures.

**John Petts (1914–91)** was a Welsh artist, best known for his engravings and stained glass.

**Lucian Freud (1922–2011)** was a German-born British artist. He is best known for his portraits.

**David Hockney (1937–)** was an important contributor to the ‘pop art’ movement of the 1960s and continues to be influential today.

## 4.5.3 藝術

在中世紀期間，大多數藝術包含了宗教主題，特別是教堂的壁畫和宗教書籍的插圖。新教改革後大部分這方面的藝術也失傳了，但富裕家庭開始收集其他繪畫和雕塑。許多英國 18 世紀和 17 世紀的畫家都是從國外，例如，漢斯·荷爾拜因和安東尼·範戴克爵士。英國藝術家，尤其是那些畫肖像和風景畫的，從 18 世紀起成名。

英國和國際藝術家的作品會在英國各地的畫廊顯示。一些知名的畫廊包括國家畫廊，泰特英國美術館和倫敦的泰特現代美術館，卡迪夫的國家博物館，和愛丁堡的蘇格蘭國家美術館。

特納獎設立於 1984 年以慶祝當代藝術。它是以約瑟夫·特納的名字命名。每年四部作品入圍並在宣布獲獎者前於泰特展出。特納獎是公認歐洲最有名望的視覺藝術獎。歷屆獲獎者包括達明安·赫斯特和理查德·賴特。

### 4.5.3.1 著名英國藝術家

**托馬斯·庚斯博羅 (1727–1788)** 是一位肖像畫家，經常以在國家或花園風景下的人為題。

**大衛·艾倫 (1744–1796)** 是蘇格蘭畫家，以肖像油畫著名。他最有名的作品是《繪畫的起源》。

**瑟夫·特納 (1775–1851)** 是影響現代風格力的風景畫家。他被認為是提昇山水畫形象的藝術家。

**約翰·康斯特布爾 (1776–1837)** 是一個風景畫家，最有名的是在薩福克(英格蘭的東部埃塞克斯邊界)戴德鎮淡水河谷的作品。

**前拉斐爾派** 是在 19 世紀下半葉一個重要藝術家群體。他們的畫以宗教或文學為主題，使用明亮顏色繪畫。該群體包括霍爾曼亨特，但丁加百列羅塞蒂和約翰·米萊斯爵士。

**約翰·拉威利爵士 (1856–1941)** 是一個非常成功的北愛爾蘭肖像畫家。他的作品包括《皇室家庭》。

**亨利·摩爾 (1898–1986)** 是英國雕塑家和藝術家。他最出名的是他的大型青銅抽象雕塑。

**約翰·畢斯 (1914–1991)** 是威爾士的藝術家，以雕刻和彩色玻璃著名

**盧西安·弗洛伊德 (1922–2011)** 是德國出生的英國藝術家。他最出名的是他的肖像畫。

**大衛·霍克尼 (1937–)** 是 1960 年代流行藝術運動中一個重要的貢獻者，至今依然具有影響力。



Tate modern is based in the former Bank side Power Station in central London

## 4.5.4 Architecture

The architectural heritage of the UK is rich and varied. In the Middle Ages, great cathedrals and churches were built, many of which still stand today. Examples are the cathedrals in Durham, Lincoln, Canterbury and Salisbury. The White Tower in the Tower of London is an example of a Norman castle keep, built on the orders of William the Conqueror.

Gradually, as the countryside became more peaceful and landowners became richer, the houses of the wealthy became more elaborate and great country houses such as Hardwick Hall in Derbyshire were built. British styles of architecture began to evolve.

In the 17th century, Inigo Jones took inspiration from classical architecture to design the Queen's House at Greenwich and the Banqueting House in Whitehall in London. Later in the century, Sir Christopher Wren helped develop a British version of the ornate styles popular in Europe in buildings such as the new St Paul's Cathedral.

In the 18th century, simpler designs became popular. The Scottish architect Robert Adam influenced the development of architecture in the UK, Europe and America. He designed the inside decoration as well as the building itself in great houses such as Dumfries House in Scotland. His ideas influenced architects in cities such as Bath, where the Royal Crescent was built.

泰特現代美術館設在倫敦市中心的前泰晤士河畔發電廠

## 4.5.4 建築

英國的建築遺產豐富多樣。在中世紀，大教堂和教堂相繼建成，其中許多今天仍然屹立。例子如在達勒姆、林肯、坎特伯雷和索爾茲伯里的大教堂。在倫敦塔的白塔是諾曼保衛城堡的一個例子，在征服者威廉(請參閱第 10 頁和 79) 的命令下建成。

漸漸地，隨著農村變得更和平和地主更富有，富人的房子變得更複雜，在德比郡哈德威克莊園等鄉村大房子也開始出現。英國風格建築開始演變。

在 17 世紀，伊尼戈·瓊斯從古典建築得到靈感，設計了在格林威治的皇后宅邸和在倫敦白廳宮的宴會宮。在世紀後期，克里斯托弗雷恩爵士協助開發了在歐洲流行的華麗風格英國版，如新的聖保羅大教堂。

在 18 世紀，簡單的設計開始流行。蘇格蘭建築師羅伯特·亞當影響了英國、歐洲和美國的建築發展。他設計大房子的內部裝飾以及建築物本身，如在蘇格蘭的鄧弗里斯別墅。他的思想影響巴庫(皇家新月樓所在地)等城市的建築師。

In the 19th century, the medieval 'gothic' style became popular again. As cities expanded, many great public buildings were built in this style. The Houses of Parliament and St Pancras Station were built at this time, as were the town halls in cities such as Manchester and Sheffield.

In the 20th century, Sir Edwin Lutyens had an influence throughout the British Empire. He designed New Delhi to be the seat of government in India. After the First World War, he was responsible for many war memorials throughout the world, including the Cenotaph in Whitehall. The Cenotaph is the site of the annual Remembrance Day service attended by the Queen, politicians and foreign ambassadors.

Modern British architects including Sir Norman Foster, Lord (Richard) Rogers and Dame Zaha Hadid continue to work on major projects throughout the world as well as within the UK.

Alongside the development of architecture, garden design and landscaping have played an important role in the UK. In the 18th century, Lancelot 'Capability' Brown designed the grounds around country houses so that the landscape appeared to be natural, with grass, trees and lakes. He often said that a place had 'capabilities'. Later, Gertrude Jekyll often worked with Edwin Lutyens to design colourful gardens around the houses he designed. Gardens continue to be an important part of homes in the UK. The annual Chelsea Flower Show showcases garden design from Britain and around the world.

## 4.5.5 Fashion and design

Britain has produced many great designers, from Thomas Chippendale (who designed furniture in the 18th century) to Clarice Cliff (who designed Art Deco ceramics) to Sir Terence Conran (a 20th-century interior designer). Leading fashion designers of recent years include Mary Quant, Alexander McQueen and Vivienne Westwood.

## 4.5.6 Literature

The UK has a prestigious literary history and tradition. Several British writers, including the novelist Sir William Golding, the poet Seamus Heaney, and the playwright Harold Pinter, have won the Nobel Prize in Literature. Other authors have become well known in popular fiction. Agatha Christie's detective stories are read all over the world and Ian Fleming's books introduced James Bond. In 2003, *The Lord of the Rings* by JRR Tolkien was voted the country's best-loved novel.

The Man Booker Prize for Fiction is awarded annually for the best fiction novel written by an author from the Commonwealth, Ireland or Zimbabwe. It has been awarded since 1968. Past winners include Ian McEwan, Hilary Mantel and Julian Barnes.

在 19 世紀，中世紀的「哥德式」風格再度流行。隨著城市擴大，許多偉大的公共建築都以這種風格建造。議會和聖潘克拉斯車站都是在這個時候建成，同期建築還有如曼徹斯特和謝菲爾德的市政廳。

在 20 世紀，埃德溫·勒琴斯爵士影響著整個大英帝國。他設計新德里成為印度政府所在地。第一次世界大戰後，他曾負責世界各地許多戰爭紀念碑，包括白廳和平紀念碑。該紀念碑是週年國殤紀念日的活動地點，女王、政治家和外國大使均會出席（見第 83 頁）。

現代英國的建築師，包括諾曼·福斯特爵士、(理查德)羅傑斯和扎哈·哈迪德女爵繼續在世界各地以及英國的重大項目工作。

除了建築發展，園林設計和景觀美化都在英國起了重要作用。在 18 世紀，蘭斯洛特「潛力」布朗設計圍繞鄉村別墅的園地，使景觀在草、樹木和湖泊襯托下顯得更自然。他常說，一個地方有潛力。後來，格特魯德·傑基爾常與埃德溫·勒琴斯一起設計圍繞房子的色彩繽紛花園。花園仍然是英國家庭的重要部分。一年一度的切爾西花展展示了來自英國和世界各地的園林設計。

## 4.5.5 時裝及設計

從托馬斯·齊本德爾（於 18 世紀設計家具）到克拉麗斯·柯莉芙（設計裝飾的藝術陶瓷），以及特倫斯·康倫爵士（20 世紀的室內設計師），英國產生了許多偉大的設計師。近年來引領時尚的設計師包括瑪麗·匡特、亞歷山大·麥昆和薇薇安·魏斯伍德。

## 4.5.6 文學

英國有著名的文學歷史和傳統。幾個英國作家，包括小說家威廉·戈爾丁爵士、詩人謝默斯·希尼和劇作家哈羅德·品特曾贏得了諾貝爾文學獎。其他的很多已經成為眾所周知的流行小說作家。阿加莎·克里斯蒂的偵探故事傳遍世界，而伊恩·弗萊明的書則創造了占士·邦。2003 年，托爾金的《魔戒》被投選為全國最喜愛的小說。

布克小說獎每年頒發給來自英聯邦、愛爾蘭和津巴布韋作家的最佳科幻小說。這獎項自 1968 年開始，過去的獲獎者包括伊恩·麥克尤恩、希拉里·曼特爾和朱利安·巴恩斯。

### 4.5.6.1 Notable authors and writers

**Jane Austen (1775–1817)** was an English novelist. Her books include *Pride and Prejudice* and *Sense and Sensibility*. Her novels are concerned with marriage and family relationships. Many have been made into television programmes or films.

**Charles Dickens (1812–70)** wrote a number of very famous novels, including *Oliver Twist* and *Great Expectations*. You will hear references in everyday talk to some of the characters in his books, such as Scrooge (a mean person) or Mr Micawber (always hopeful).

**Robert Louis Stevenson (1850–94)** wrote books which are still read by adults and children today. His most famous books include *Treasure Island*, *Kidnapped* and *Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*.

**Thomas Hardy (1840–1928)** was an author and poet. His best-known novels focus on rural society and include *Far from the Madding Crowd* and *Jude the Obscure*.

**Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (1859–1930)** was a Scottish doctor and writer. He was best known for his stories about Sherlock Holmes, who was one of the first fictional detectives.

**Evelyn Waugh (1903–66)** wrote satirical novels, including *Decline and Fall* and *Scoop*. He is perhaps best known for *Brideshead Revisited*.

**Sir Kingsley Amis (1922–95)** was an English novelist and poet. He wrote more than 20 novels. The most well-known is *Lucky Jim*.

**Graham Greene (1904–91)** wrote novels often influenced by his religious beliefs, including *The Heart of the Matter*, *The Honorary Consul*, *Brighton Rock* and *Our Man in Havana*.

**J K Rowling (1965–)** wrote the Harry Potter series of children's books, which have enjoyed huge international success. She now writes fiction for adults as well.

### 4.5.6.2 British poets

British poetry is among the richest in the world. The Anglo-Saxon poem *Beowulf* tells of its hero's battles against monsters and is still translated into modern English. Poems which survive from the Middle Ages include Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* and a poem called *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, about one of the knights at the court of King Arthur.

As well as plays, Shakespeare wrote many sonnets (poems which must be 14 lines long) and some longer poems. As Protestant ideas spread, a number of poets wrote poems inspired by their religious views. One of these was John Milton, who wrote *Paradise Lost*.

Other poets, including William Wordsworth, were inspired by nature. Sir Walter Scott wrote poems inspired by Scotland and the traditional stories and songs from the area on the borders of Scotland and England. He also wrote novels, many of which were set in Scotland.

Poetry was very popular in the 19th century, with poets such as William Blake, John Keats, Lord Byron, Percy Shelley, Alfred Lord Tennyson, and Robert and Elizabeth Browning. Later, many poets – for example, Wilfred Owen and Siegfried Sassoon – were inspired to write about their experiences in the First World War. More recently, popular poets have included Sir Walter de la Mare, John Masefield, Sir John Betjeman and Ted Hughes.

### 4.5.6.1 著名的作家

**簡·奧斯汀 (1775–1817)** 是英國小說家。她的著作包括《傲慢與偏見》與《理智與情感》。她的小說關注婚姻和家庭關係。許多她的作品都被製作成電視節目或電影。

**查爾斯·狄更斯 (1812–1870)** 寫了一些非常著名的小說，包括《霧都孤兒》和《遠大前程》。你會在日常談話中聽到一些他著作角色的比喻，如守財奴（小人）或米考伯先生（總是有希望的）。

**羅伯特·路易斯·史蒂文森 (1850–1894)** 的著作今天仍然有成人和兒童閱讀。他最有名的著作包括《金銀島》、《綁架》和《化身博士和海德先生》。

**托馬斯·哈代 (1840–1928)** 是一位作家和詩人。他最著名的小說側重於農村社會，包括《遠離塵囂》和《無名的裘德》。

**阿瑟·柯南·道爾爵士 (1859–1930)** 是一位蘇格蘭醫生和作家。他最出名的是他的《福爾摩斯》故事，這角色是第一個虛構的偵探之一。

**伊夫林·沃 (1903–1966)** 寫諷刺小說，包括《衰落與瓦解》和《獨家新聞》。他最出名的著作也許是《慾望莊園》。

**金斯利·艾米斯爵士 (1922–1995)** 是英國小說家和詩人。他寫了 20 多部小說。其中最有名的是《幸運的吉姆》。

**格雷厄姆·格林 (1904–1991)** 的小說常常受他的宗教信仰影響，包括《事物的核心》、《榮譽領事》、《布萊登棒棒糖》和《我們在哈瓦那的人》。

**JK 羅琳 (1965–)** 寫的兒童書《哈利·波特》系列於全球得到巨大成功。她現在也為成年人讀者寫小說。

### 4.5.6.2 英國詩人

英國有最全球最豐富的詩歌。盎格魯撒克遜的詩《貝奧武甫》講述了英雄對怪物的戰鬥，現在被翻譯成現代英語。從中世紀存活下的詩包括喬叟的《坎特伯雷故事》和一首叫《高文爵士與綠騎士》（有關亞瑟王宮廷的一個騎士）的詩。

除了戲劇，莎士比亞也寫了許多十四行詩（詩必須長 14 行）和一些較長的詩。由於新教思想的傳播，一些詩人以他們的宗教觀點為靈感寫詩。其中之一是約翰·彌爾頓，他寫了《失樂園》。

其他詩人，其中包括威廉·華茲華斯，受大自然啟發。沃爾特·斯科特爵士寫詩的靈感來自蘇格蘭及從蘇格蘭和英格蘭邊界的傳統故事和歌曲。他還寫小說，其中有許多以蘇格蘭為場景。

詩歌在 19 世紀很流行，這時期的詩人包括威廉·布萊克、約翰·濟慈、戈登·拜倫、比斯·雪萊、阿爾弗雷德·丁尼生勳爵、羅伯特和伊麗莎白·勃朗寧。後來，如威爾弗雷德·歐文和齊格弗里德·沙宣等許多詩人受啟發寫出他們在第一次世界大戰的經驗。最近，流行的詩人包括沃爾特·德·德拉馬、約翰·梅斯菲爾德、約翰·貝傑文爵士和特德·休斯。

Some of the best-known poets are buried or commemorated in Poet's Corner in Westminster Abbey.

Some famous lines include:

*'Oh to be in England now that April's there  
And whoever wakes in England sees, some morning, unaware,  
That the lowest boughs and the brushwood sheaf  
Round the elm-tree bole are in tiny leaf  
While the Chaffinch sings on the orchard bough  
In England – Now!'  
(Robert Browning, 1812–89 – Home Thoughts from Abroad)*

*'She walks in beauty, like the night  
Of cloudless climes and starry skies,  
All that's best of dark and bright  
Meet in her aspect and her eyes'  
(Lord Byron, 1788–1824 – She Walks in Beauty)*

*'I wander'd lonely as a cloud  
That floats on high o'er vales and hills  
When all at once I saw a crowd,  
A host of golden daffodils'  
(William Wordsworth, 1770–1850 – The Daffodils)*

*'Tyger! Tyger! Burning bright  
In the forests of the night,  
What immortal hand or eye  
Could frame thy fearful symmetry?'  
(William Blake, 1757–1827 – The Tyger)*

*'What passing-bells for these who die as cattle?  
Only the monstrous anger of the guns.  
Only the stuttering rifles' rapid rattle  
Can patter out their hasty orisons.'  
(Wilfred Owen, 1893–1918 – Anthem for Doomed Youth)*

#### Check that you understand

- Which sports are particularly popular in the UK
- Some of the major sporting events that take place each year
- Some of the major arts and culture events that happen in the UK
- How achievements in arts and culture are formally recognised
- Important figures in British literature

一些最有名的詩人被埋在威斯敏斯特教堂紀念詩人之家。

一些著名的詩句包括：

*啊·能回到已是4月的英國多好啊！  
那裡·清晨醒來·無論誰·都會在不經意間看到  
那低垂的樹枝和濃密的灌木叢  
環繞在榆樹周圍·鬱鬱蔥蔥  
燕雀在果園的枝頭歌唱  
英格蘭 – 就在此刻  
(羅伯特·勃朗寧·1812 - 89 - 異域思鄉)*

*她走在美的光彩中·彷彿晚上  
無雲的天氣滿天星斗  
正是絕佳的暗與亮  
'融匯於外貌與眼眸'  
(戈登·拜倫·1788 - 1824 - 她走在美的光彩中)*

*我孤獨地漫遊·像一朵雲  
漂泊山谷間  
驀地忽然見  
遍地金水仙  
(威廉·華茲華斯, 1770 - 1850 - 水仙花)*

*老虎!老虎!你金色的輝煌  
火似地照亮黑夜的林莽  
什麼樣超凡的手和眼睛  
能塑造出你這可怕的勻稱?  
(威廉·布萊克·1757 - 1827 - 老虎)*

*什麼樣的喪鐘·為那番慘死的人們響起?  
只有毛骨悚然的短槍怒吼之聲  
只有喋喋不休的長槍結巴之聲  
可以倉促叨唸出他們的死前祈禱  
(威爾弗雷德·歐文·1893 - 1918 - 戰爭安魂曲)*

#### Check that you understand

- 那些運動在英國特別受歡迎
- 一些每年舉行的主要的體育賽事
- 一些在英國舉行的主要藝術和文化活動
- 在文化藝術成就得到正式承認
- 英國文學的重要人物

## 4.6 Leisure

People in the UK spend their leisure time in many different ways.

### 4.6.1 Gardening

A lot of people have gardens at home and will spend their free time looking after them. Some people rent additional land called 'an allotment', where they grow fruit and vegetables. Gardening and flower shows range from major national exhibitions to small local events. Many towns have garden centres selling plants and gardening equipment. There are famous gardens to visit throughout the UK, including Kew Gardens, Sissinghurst and Hidcote in England, Crathes Castle and Inveraray Castle in Scotland, Bodnant Garden in Wales, and Mount Stewart in Northern Ireland.

The countries that make up the UK all have flowers which are particularly associated with them and which are sometimes worn on national saints' days.

### 4.6.2 Shopping

There are many different places to go shopping in the UK. Most towns and cities have a central shopping area, which is called the town centre. Undercover shopping centres are also common – these might be in town centres or on the outskirts of a town or city. Most shops in the UK are open seven days a week, although trading hours on Sundays and public holidays are generally reduced. Many towns also have markets on one or more days a week, where stallholders sell a variety of goods.

### 4.6.3 Cooking and food

Many people in the UK enjoy cooking. They often invite each other to their homes for dinner. A wide variety of food is eaten in the UK because of the country's rich cultural heritage and diverse population.

#### 4.6.3.1 Traditional foods

There are a variety of foods that are traditionally associated with different parts of the UK:

- **England:** Roast beef, which is served with potatoes, vegetables, Yorkshire puddings (batter that is baked in the oven) and other accompaniments. Fish and chips are also popular.
- **Wales:** Welsh cakes – a traditional Welsh snack made from flour, dried fruits and spices, and served either hot or cold.
- **Scotland:** Haggis – a sheep's stomach stuffed with offal, suet, onions and oatmeal.
- **Northern Ireland:** Ulster fry – a fried meal with bacon, eggs, sausage, black pudding, white pudding, tomatoes, mushrooms, soda bread and potato bread.

## 4.6 休閒活動

英國人在閒暇時間有許多不同的活動。

### 4.6.1 園藝

很多人家裡都有花園，他們會花空閒時間打理它們。有些人租用了被稱為「分配地」的額外土地以種植水果和蔬菜。園藝和花卉展覽由全國性大展覽，至當地小型活動。很多城鎮都有園藝中心銷售植物和園藝設備。英國各地有多個著名的花園，其中包括英國皇家植物園，西辛赫斯特和在英格蘭的格洛斯特，在蘇格蘭的克雷斯城堡和弗雷裡城堡，在威爾士的博德南特花園，和在北愛爾蘭的斯圖爾特山。

英國的各個國家都各自有代表它們的花，人們會在全國聖徒日時戴上它們

- 英格蘭 - 玫瑰
- 蘇格蘭 - 薊
- 威爾士 - 水仙花
- 北愛爾蘭 - 三葉草

### 4.6.2 購物

英國有許多不同的購物地方。大多數城鎮都有購物區，這就是所謂的鎮中心。地下購物中心在城市中心或在郊區也很常見。大多數英國商店每週營業七天，但在星期日及公眾假期營業時間普遍較短。許多城鎮每星期也有一天或多天的市場。那裡的攤販出售各種各樣的商品。

### 4.6.3 烹飪和食物

許多英國人享受烹飪。他們經常邀請對方到自己家吃飯。該國豐富的文化底蘊和多樣的人口使英國食品種類繁多。

#### 4.6.3.1 傳統食品

各種各樣的食物與英國不同部分相關聯：

**英國：**烤牛肉，配土豆，蔬菜，約克郡布丁（烤麵糊）。魚塊和薯條也很受歡迎。

**威爾士：**威爾士蛋糕 – 由麵粉，乾果和香料做成的傳統威爾士小吃，冷吃熱吃亦可。

**蘇格蘭：**羊雜碎 – 塞滿了雜碎，板油，洋蔥，燕麥片的羊肚子。

**北愛爾蘭：**英式早餐–煙肉，雞蛋，香腸，黑布丁，白布丁，西紅柿，蘑菇，蘇打麵包和馬鈴薯麵包而成的早餐。

## 4.6.4 Films

### 4.6.4.1 British film industry

The UK has had a major influence on modern cinema.

Films were first shown publicly in the UK in 1896 and film screenings very quickly became popular. From the beginning, film makers became famous for clever special effects and this continues to be an area of British expertise. From the early days of the cinema, British actors have worked in both the UK and USA. Sir Charles (Charlie) Chaplin became famous in silent movies for his tramp character and was one of many British actors to make a career in Hollywood.

British studios flourished in the 1930s. Eminent directors included Sir Alexander Korda and Sir Alfred Hitchcock, who later left for Hollywood and remained an important film director until his death in 1980. During the Second World War, British movies (for example, *In Which We Serve*) played an important part in boosting morale. Later, British directors including Sir David Lean and Ridley Scott found great success both in the UK and internationally.

The 1950s and 1960s were a high point for British comedies, including *Passport to Pimlico*, *The Ladykillers* and, later, the *Carry On* films.

Many of the films now produced in the UK are made by foreign companies, using British expertise. Some of the most commercially successful films of all time, including the two highest-grossing film franchises (Harry Potter and James Bond), have been produced in the UK. Ealing Studios has a claim to being the oldest continuously working film studio facility in the world. Britain continues to be particularly strong in special effects and animation. One example is the work of Nick Park, who has won four Oscars for his animated films, including three for films featuring Wallace and Gromit.

Actors such as Sir Lawrence Olivier, David Niven, Sir Rex Harrison and Richard Burton starred in a wide variety of popular films. British actors continue to be popular and continue to win awards throughout the world. Recent British actors to have won Oscars include Colin Firth, Sir Anthony Hopkins, Dame Judi Dench, Kate Winslet and Tilda Swinton.

The annual British Academy Film Awards, hosted by the British Academy of Film and Television Arts (BAFTA), are the British equivalent of the Oscars.

## 4.6.4 電影

### 4.6.4.1 英國電影業

英國對現代電影產生了重大影響。英國首次公展電影發生於 1896 年，其後電影放映迅速走紅。從一開始，英國電影製作人因其聰明的特殊效果而著名，至今這仍是英國專長的領域。從電影院時代的初期，英國演員已經在英國和美國工作。查爾斯（查理）卓別林爵士在無聲電影中演流浪漢角色而著名，他也是許多英國好萊塢演員之一。

英國電影製片公司於 1930 年代變得興旺。著名導演包括亞歷山大·科達爵士和阿爾弗雷德·希區柯克爵士（他離開英國到好萊塢發展，他於 1980 年去世前仍然是一個舉足輕重的電影導演）。在第二次世界大戰中，英國的電影（例如《為國盡忠》）發揮了鼓舞士氣的重要作用。後來，英國導演包括大衛·里恩爵士和雷德利·斯科特在英國和國際上得到了巨大成功。

1950 年代和 60 年代是英國喜劇的高峰期，包括《通往平利可的護照》、《師奶殺手》，以及英國經典爆笑喜劇系列。

現在很多在英國生產的電影是由外國公司所製，但採用英國的專業知識。一些史上最成功的商業電影，包括兩個最賣座的電影系列（哈利·波特與占士·邦）都是在英國產生。伊林影城是世上最古老但依然運作的電影製片廠設施。特效和動畫仍然是英國的強項。其中一個例子是以動畫電影贏得了四項奧斯卡大獎的尼克·帕克，當中三次是以《超級無敵掌門狗》獲獎。

演員如勞倫斯·奧利弗爵士、大衛·尼文、雷克斯·哈里森和理查德·伯頓主演了各種流行的電影。英國演員繼續成為寵兒，並繼續在世界各地贏得獎項。最近贏得了奧斯卡獎的英國演員包括科林·弗斯、安東尼·霍普金斯爵士、朱迪·丹奇女爵、凱特·溫斯萊特和蒂達·斯溫頓。

一年一度的英國影視藝術學院電影獎由英國影藝學院（BAFTA）舉辦，相等於英國的奧斯卡。

#### 4.6.4.1.1 Some famous British films

- *The 39 Steps* (1935), directed by Alfred Hitchcock
- *Brief Encounter* (1945), directed by David Lean
- *The Third Man* (1949), directed by Carol Reed
- *The Belles of St Trinian's* (1954), directed by Frank Launder
- *Lawrence of Arabia* (1962), directed by David Lean
- *Women in Love* (1969), directed by Ken Russell
- *Don't Look Now* (1973), directed by Nicolas Roeg
- *Chariots of Fire* (1981), directed by Hugh Hudson
- *The Killing Fields* (1984), directed by Roland Joffé
- *Four Weddings and a Funeral* (1994), directed by Mike Newell
- *Touching the Void* (2003), directed by Kevin MacDonald.

#### 4.6.4.1.1 著名英國電影

- 39 台階 (1935) · 阿爾弗雷德 · 希區柯克
- 相見恨晚 (1945) · 大衛 · 里恩
- 第三人 (1949) · 卡羅爾 · 里德
- 烏龍女校 (1954) · 弗蘭克 · 朗德
- 阿拉伯的勞倫斯 (1962) · 大衛 · 里恩
- 戀愛中的女人 (1969) · 肯 · 羅素
- 威尼斯痴魂 (1973) · 尼古拉斯 · 羅格
- 烈火戰車 (1981) · 休斯 · 赫德森
- 殺戮戰場 (1984) · 羅蘭 · 約菲
- 四個婚禮一個葬禮 (1994) · 邁克 · 紐厄爾
- 攀越冰峰 (2003) · 凱文 · 麥克唐納。

#### 4.6.5 British comedy

The traditions of comedy and satire, and the ability to laugh at ourselves, are an important part of the UK character. Medieval kings and rich nobles had jesters who told jokes and made fun of people in the Court. Later, Shakespeare included comic characters in his plays. In the 18th century, political cartoons attacking prominent politicians – and, sometimes, the monarch or other members of the Royal Family – became increasingly popular. In the 19th century, satirical magazines began to be published. The most famous was *Punch*, which was published for the first time in the 1840s. Today, political cartoons continue to be published in newspapers, and magazines such as *Private Eye* continue the tradition of satire.

Comedians were a popular feature of British music hall, a form of variety theatre which was very common until television became the leading form of entertainment in the UK. Some of the people who had performed in the music halls in the 1940s and 1950s, such as Morecambe and Wise, became stars of television.

Television comedy developed its own style. Situation comedies, or sitcoms, which often look at family life and relationships in the workplace, remain popular. Satire has also continued to be important, with shows like *That Was The Week That Was* in the 1960s and *Spitting Image* in the 1980s and 1990s. In 1969, *Monty Python's Flying Circus* introduced a new type of progressive comedy. Stand-up comedy, where a solo comedian talks to a live audience, has become popular again in recent years.

#### 4.6.5 英國喜劇

喜劇 · 諷刺和自嘲能力的傳統是英國特色的重要部分。

中世紀國王和貴族有弄臣為他們說笑逗樂。後來，莎士比亞在他的戲劇包含了喜劇人物。在 18 世紀，政治卡通攻擊重要的政治家，有時更會指責君主或王室其他成員，這風氣變得越來越流行。在 19 世紀，諷刺雜誌開始出版。最有名的是在 1840 年第一次發表的《潘趣》。今天，政治漫畫繼續被刊登在報紙和雜誌，如《私家偵探》等繼續諷刺的傳統。

直到電視在英國成為娛樂的主流娛樂前，喜劇演員是英國音樂大廳的表演常客。有些曾在 1940 年代和 50 年代在音樂廳表演的人如莫克姆和懷斯成為電視明星。

電視喜劇發展了自己的風格。其中經常探討家庭生活和職場人際關係的情景喜劇仍然很受歡迎。諷刺元素仍然十分重要，包括 1960 年代的《TW3》和 1980 年代和 90 年代的《分裂畫面》。1969 年，蒙提·派森的《飛行馬戲團》推出了一種新型的漸進喜劇。由一個喜劇演員向現場觀眾說笑的棟篤笑近幾年又開始流行起來。



## 4.6.6 Television and radio

Many different television (TV) channels are available in the UK. Some are free to watch and others require a paid subscription. British television shows a wide variety of programmes. Popular programmes include regular soap operas such as *Coronation Street* and *EastEnders*. In Scotland, some Scotland-specific programmes are shown and there is also a channel with programmes in the Gaelic language. There is a Welsh-language channel in Wales. There are also programmes specific to Northern Ireland and some programmes broadcast in Irish Gaelic.

Everyone in the UK with a TV, computer or other medium which can be used for watching TV must have a television licence. One licence covers all of the equipment in one home, except when people rent different rooms in a shared house and each has a separate tenancy agreement – those people must each buy a separate licence. People over 75 can apply for a free TV licence and blind people can get a 50% discount. You will receive a fine of up to £1,000 if you watch TV but do not have a TV licence.

The money from TV licences is used to pay for the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC). This is a British public service broadcaster providing television and radio programmes. The BBC is the largest broadcaster in the world. It is the only wholly state-funded media organisation that is independent of government. Other UK channels are primarily funded through advertisements and subscriptions.

There are also many different radio stations in the UK. Some broadcast nationally and others in certain cities or regions. There are radio stations that play certain types of music and some broadcast in regional languages such as Welsh or Gaelic. Like television, BBC radio stations are funded by TV licences and other radio stations are funded through advertisements.

## 4.6.7 Social networking

Social networking websites such as Facebook and Twitter are a popular way for people to stay in touch with friends, organise social events, and share photos, videos and opinions. Many people use social networking on their mobile phones when out and about.

## 4.6.6 電視與廣播節目

英國有許多不同的電視頻道。有些是免費觀看，有些則需要付費。英國的電視包含各種各樣的節目。受歡迎的節目包括定期肥皂劇，如《冠冕街》和《東倫敦》。在蘇格蘭有一些專為蘇格蘭而設的節目，也有蓋爾語節目的頻道。在威爾士有一些威爾士語頻道。也有一些專為北愛爾蘭而設的節目，有些以愛爾蘭蓋爾語播出。

每個人擁有電視，電腦或可用於觀看電視等媒體的英國人都必須有一個電視牌照。一個許可證涵蓋了一個家庭所有的設備，除了當人們在一個合租的房子租不同的房間，每間都有獨立的租賃協議 - 那些人必須個別購買單獨的許可證。年過 75 的人可申請免費電視牌照，盲人可以得到 50% 的折扣。如果你看電視但沒有一個電視牌照，你將被罰款高達 1000 英鎊。

從電視牌照所得的錢是用於英國廣播公司 (BBC)。這是英國的公共廣播機構，提供電視和廣播節目。英國廣播公司是世界上最大的廣播公司。這是唯一獨立於政府的獨資媒體組織。英國其他的頻道是以廣告和訂閱費為主要營運資金。

英國也有許多不同的電台。某些電台是全國廣播，有些則是地區性廣播。有些廣播電台播放某些類型的音樂，亦有一些以地區性語言和地區的語言如威爾士語和蓋爾語廣播。如電視一樣，BBC 廣播電台通過電視牌照取得經費，其他廣播電台則依靠廣告收入。

## 4.6.7 社交網絡

社交網站如 Facebook 和 Twitter 是人們與朋友保持聯繫，組織社交活動，並共享照片，視頻和意見的一種流行的方式。許多人在外出時以手機使用社交網絡。

## 4.6.8 Pubs and night clubs

Public houses (pubs) are an important part of the UK social culture. Many people enjoy meeting friends in the pub. Most communities will have a 'local' pub that is a natural focal point for social activities. Pub quizzes are popular. Pool and darts are traditional pub games. To buy alcohol in a pub or night club you must be 18 or over, but people under that age may be allowed in some pubs with an adult. When they are 16, people can drink wine or beer with a meal in a hotel or restaurant (including eating areas in pubs) as long as they are with someone over 18.

Pubs are usually open during the day from 11.00 am (12 noon on Sundays). Night clubs with dancing and music usually open and close later than pubs. The licensee decides the hours that the pub or night club is open.

## 4.6.9 Betting and gambling

In the UK, people often enjoy a gamble on sports or other events. There are also casinos in many places. You have to be 18 to go into betting shops or gambling clubs. There is a National Lottery for which draws are made every week. You can enter by buying a ticket or a scratch card. People under 16 are not allowed to participate in the National Lottery.

## 4.6.10 Pets

A lot of people in the UK have pets such as cats or dogs. They might have them for company or because they enjoy looking after them. It is against the law to treat a pet cruelly or to neglect it. All dogs in public places must wear a collar showing the name and address of the owner. The owner is responsible for keeping the dog under control and for cleaning up after the animal in a public place.

Vaccinations and medical treatment for animals are available from veterinary surgeons (vets). There are charities which may help people who cannot afford to pay a vet.

## 4.6.8 酒吧和夜總會

酒吧是英國社會文化的重要組成部分。很多人喜歡在酒吧裡與朋友相聚。大多數社區也有一個本地酒吧作為社交活動的中心點。酒吧的問答很受歡迎。桌球和飛鏢是傳統的酒吧遊戲。在酒吧或夜總會買酒必須年滿 18 歲，但在這個年齡以下的人也可以在成年人陪同下光顧酒吧。只要他們與年滿 18 歲的人一起，年滿 16 歲的人也可以在酒店或餐廳（包括酒吧的進餐區）喝葡萄酒或啤酒。

酒吧通常是在從上午 11 時（週日中午 12）開始營業。跳舞和音樂的夜總會通常比酒吧遲開始營業和關門。持牌人決定該酒吧或夜總會的開放時間。

## 4.6.9 博彩和賭博

在英國，人們常常喜歡在運動或其他事件進行賭博。英國很多地方也有賭場。你必須要年滿 18 歲方可進入投注站或賭博俱樂部。國家彩票每週也會進行抽獎。你可以通過買票或刮卡參與。16 歲以下的人不准參與國家彩票。

## 4.6.10 寵物

在英國很多人有寵物，如貓、狗。他們可能以寵物為伴或是喜歡照顧牠們。虐待寵物或忽視牠們是違法。在公共場所所有狗必須戴上顯示所有者名稱和地址的項圈。主人有責任控制他們的寵物，並為清理動物在公共場所留下的廢物。

獸醫提供疫動物苗接種和醫療。有慈善機構可以幫助付不起獸醫服務的人。

## 4.7 Places of Interest

The UK has a large network of public footpaths in the countryside. There are also many opportunities for mountain biking, mountaineering and hill walking. There are 15 national parks in England, Wales and Scotland. They are areas of protected countryside that everyone can visit, and where people live, work and look after the landscape.

There are many museums in the UK, which range from small community museums to large national and civic collections. Famous landmarks exist in towns, cities and the countryside throughout the UK. Most of them are open to the public to view (generally for a charge).

Many parts of the countryside and places of interest are kept open by the National Trust in England, Wales and Northern Ireland and the National Trust for Scotland. Both are charities that work to preserve important buildings, coastline and countryside in the UK. The National Trust was founded in 1895 by three volunteers. There are now more than 61,000 volunteers helping to keep the organisation running.

### 4.7.1 UK landmarks

#### Big Ben



Big Ben is the nickname for the great bell of the clock at the Houses of Parliament in London. Many people call the clock Big Ben as well. The clock is over 150 years old and is a popular tourist attraction. The clock tower is named 'Elizabeth Tower' in honour of Queen Elizabeth II's Diamond Jubilee in 2012.

## 4.7 名勝古蹟

英國在農村有一個大型公共行人路的網絡，也提供很多騎山地自行車、登山和行山的機會。在英格蘭、威爾士和蘇格蘭有共 15 個國家公園。它們是受保護的郊外地區，每個人都可以前往探索，也有人在這些地方生活、工作和看風景。

從小型社區博物館到大型國家和公民收藏館，英國有許多博物館。英國各地城鎮、城市和郊區有著各樣著名的地標。他們大多是向公眾開放（一般都會收費）。

郊外地區和名勝由在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭的國家名勝古蹟信託和蘇格蘭國家信託打理。兩者都是保育英國重要建築物、海岸線和郊區的慈善機構。國家名勝古蹟信託於 1895 年由三名志願者成立。現在有超過 61,000 的志願者協助組織營運。

### 4.7.1 英國名勝

大本鐘

大本鐘是在倫敦議會大樓上大鐘的暱稱。許多人把它稱為大本鐘。這時鐘超過 150 歲，是一個著名的旅遊景點。鐘樓在 2012 年女王伊麗莎白二世的鑽石禧年被命名為「伊麗莎白塔」。

## The Eden Project

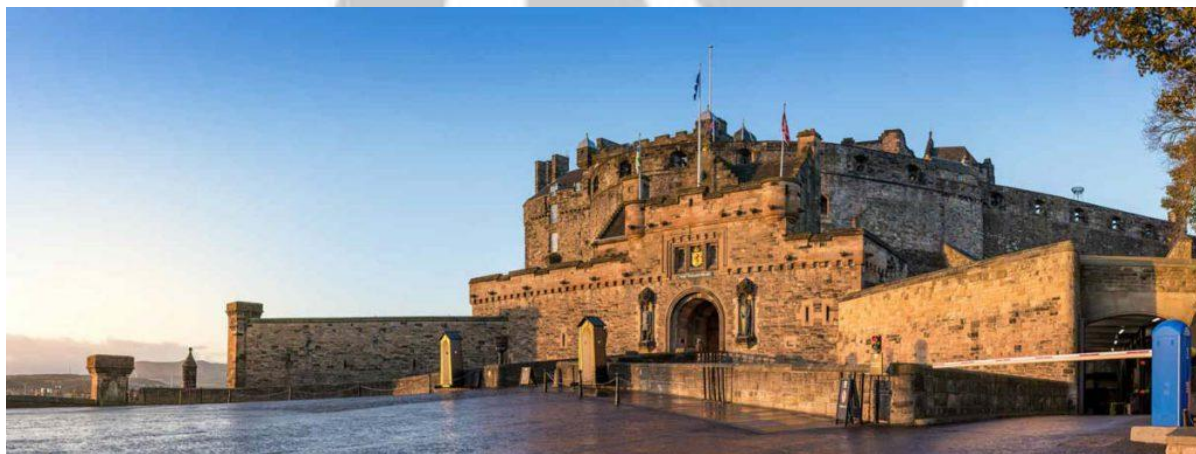


The Eden Project is located in Cornwall, in the south west of England. Its biomes, which are like giant greenhouses, house plants from all over the world. The Eden Project is also a charity which runs environmental and social projects internationally.

## 伊甸園項目

伊甸園項目位於英格蘭西南部的康沃爾郡。它的生物群落就像巨大的溫室，有著來自世界各地的植物。伊甸園項目也是一個慈善機構，參與國際性環境和社會項目。

## Edinburgh Castle



The Castle is a dominant feature of the skyline in Edinburgh, Scotland. It has a long history, dating back to the early Middle Ages. It is looked after by Historic Scotland, a Scottish government agency.

## 愛丁堡城堡

該城堡成為蘇格蘭愛丁堡的天際線的主要特徵。它有著悠久的歷史，可追溯到中世紀早期。它是由蘇格蘭政府機構蘇格蘭文物局打理。

## The Giant's Causeway



Located on the north-east coast of Northern Ireland, the Giant's Causeway is a land formation of columns made from volcanic lava. It was formed about 50 million years ago. There are many legends about the Causeway and how it was formed.

## 巨人堤道

位於北愛爾蘭東北海岸，巨人堤道是由火山熔岩石柱形成的土地。它於大約 50 萬年前形成。堤道及它的由來有著許多傳說。

## Loch Lomond and the Trossachs National Park



This national park covers 720 square miles (1,865 square kilometres) in the west of Scotland. Loch Lomond is the largest expanse of fresh water in mainland Britain and probably the best-known part of the park.

羅蒙湖和特羅薩克斯山國家公園這個在蘇格蘭西部的國家公園

佔地 720 平方英里 (1,865 平方公里)。羅蒙湖是英國大陸最大的淡水湖泊，也可能是公園最知名的一部分。

## London Eye



The London Eye is situated on the southern bank of the River Thames and is a Ferris wheel that is 443 feet (135 metres) tall. It was originally built as part of the UK's celebration of the new millennium and continues to be an important part of New Year celebrations.

## 倫敦之眼

倫敦眼坐落於泰晤士河南岸，是一個摩天輪即是 443' (135 米) 高。它最初是作為英國的慶祝新千年的一部分，並繼續成為新年慶祝活動的重要組成部分。

## Snowdonia



Snowdonia is a national park in North Wales. It covers an area of 838 square miles (2,170 square kilometres). Its most well-known landmark is Snowdon, which is the highest mountain in Wales.

## 雪墩山

雪墩山是在北威爾士的國家公園。它佔地 838 平方英里 (2,170 平方公里)。其最知名的地標雪墩，是威爾士最高的山。

## The Tower of London



The Tower of London was first built by William the Conqueror after he became king in 1066. Tours are given by the Yeoman Warders, also known as Beefeaters, who tell visitors about the building's history. People can also see the Crown Jewels there.

### 倫敦塔

倫敦塔最早是由征服者威廉在 1066 年成為國王之後建造。觀光團由倫敦塔守衛帶領，會告訴遊客有關該建築的歷史。人們還可以在那裡看到皇冠上的寶石。

## The Lake District



The Lake District is England's largest national park. It covers 885 square miles (2,292 square kilometres). It is famous for its lakes and mountains and is very popular with climbers, walkers and sailors. The biggest stretch of water is Windermere. In 2007, television viewers voted Wastwater as Britain's favourite view.

### 湖區

湖區是英國最大的國家公園。它佔地 885 平方英里 ( 2,292 平方公里 )。它因的湖泊和山脈著名，很受登山者，徒步旅行者和乘船者歡迎。最大的湖泊是溫德米爾。2007 年，電視觀眾投票選出華斯特湖作為英國最受歡迎的風景。

## Check that you understand

- Some of the ways in which people in the UK spend their leisure time
- The development of British cinema
- What the television licence is and how it funds the BBC
- Some of the places of interest to visit in the UK

## Check that you understand

- 英國人閒暇時間的活動
- 英國電影的發展
- 什麼是電視牌照以及它是如何資助英國廣播公司
- 英國的名勝

# Chapter 5: The UK Government, the Law and your Role

## Chapter contents

- [The development of British democracy](#)
- [The British constitution](#)
- [The government](#)
- [The UK and international institutions](#)
- [Respecting the law](#)
- [Fundamental principles](#)
- [Your role in the community](#)

The UK is a parliamentary democracy with the monarch as head of state. This section will tell you about the different institutions which make up this democratic system and explain how you can play a part in the democratic process.

## 5.1 The Development of British Democracy

Democracy is a system of government where the whole adult population gets a say. This might be by direct voting or by choosing representatives to make decisions on their behalf.

At the turn of the 19th century, Britain was not a democracy as we know it today. Although there were elections to select members of Parliament (MPs), only a small group of people could vote. They were men who were over 21 years of age and who owned a certain amount of property.

The franchise (that is, the number of people who had the right to vote) grew over the course of the 19th century and political parties began to involve ordinary men and women as members.

In the 1830s and 1840s, a group called the Chartists campaigned for reform. They wanted six changes:

- for every man to have the vote
- elections every year
- for all regions to be equal in the electoral system
- secret ballots
- for any man to be able to stand as an MP
- for MPs to be paid.

At the time, the campaign was generally seen as a failure. However, by 1918 most of these reforms had been adopted. The voting franchise was also extended to women over 30, and then in 1928 to men and women over 21. In 1969, the voting age was reduced to 18 for men and women.

# 5: 英國政府，法律，和你的角色

## 本章內容

- 英國的民主發展
- 英國憲法
- 政府
- 英國和國際機構
- 尊重法律
- 基本原則
- 你在社區中的角色

英國是一個以君主作為國家元首的議會民主制國家。本節將告訴你組成這種民主制度的不同機構，並解釋你如何能在民主進程中發揮作用。

## 5.1 英國的民主發展

民主是一個政府系統，所有成人也有權利表達意願。這可能是通過直接投票或選擇代表代其作出決定。

在 19 世紀之交，英國是不是我們今天所知道的民主國家。雖然有選舉選出議會成員（國會議員），只有一小部分人可以投票。能投票的人是超過 21 歲並擁有一定財產的男仕。

在 19 世紀，選民（即有權投票的人數）有所增加，政黨開始以普通男女為成員。

**憲章運動**，在 1830 年代和 1840 年代，一個名為憲章派的組織為改革而運動。他們希望進行六項更改：

- 讓每個人都有投票權
- 每年一度進行選舉
- 選舉系統中的所有地區都應平等
- 不記名投票
- 所有人也有權成為國會議員
- 國會議員受薪

當時，該運動被普遍認為是失敗的。然而，1918 年大部分這些改革已獲得通過。投票權還擴展至年過 30 的婦女，然後在 1928 年延伸至 21 歲以上男女，在 1969 年，男女投票的年齡降至 18 歲。



## 5.2 The British Constitution

A constitution is a set of principles by which a country is governed. It includes all of the institutions that are responsible for running the country and how their power is kept in check. The constitution also includes laws and conventions. The British constitution is not written down in any single document, and therefore it is described as 'unwritten'. This is mainly because the UK, unlike America or France, has never had a revolution which led permanently to a totally new system of government. Our most important institutions have developed over hundreds of years. Some people believe that there should be a single document, but others believe an unwritten constitution allows for more flexibility and better government.

### 5.2.1 Constitutional institutions

In the UK, there are several different parts of government. The main ones are:

- the monarchy
- Parliament (the House of Commons and the House of Lords)
- the Prime Minister
- the cabinet
- the judiciary (courts)
- the police
- the civil service
- local government.

In addition, there are devolved governments in Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland that have the power to legislate on certain issues.

### 5.2.2 The monarchy



Queen Elizabeth II, head of state of the UK

## 5.2 英國憲法

一部憲法是國家的治理原則。它包括所有負責管理國家的機構以及它們的權力平衡。憲法還包括法律和公約。英國憲法沒有寫在任何一個文件，因此它被描述為「不成文」。這主要是因為英國不像美國或法國，英國從來沒有一個革命導致一個全新的政府體制。我們最重要的機構已經發展了幾百年。有些人認為，應該有一個單一的文件，但其他人認為的不成文憲法有著更大的靈活性和有助發展更好的政府。

### 5.2.1 憲法機構

在英國，政府有幾個不同的部分。主要的有：

- 君主制
- 議會（下議院和上議院）
- 首相
- 內閣
- 司法部門（法院）
- 警察
- 公民服務
- 地方政府

此外，在蘇格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭有著權力下放的政府，它們擁有在在某些問題上立法的權力。

### 5.2.2 君主制

Queen Elizabeth II is the head of state of the UK. She is also the monarch or head of state for many countries in the Commonwealth. The UK has a constitutional monarchy. This means that the king or queen does not rule the country but appoints the government, which the people have chosen in a democratic election. The monarch invites the leader of the party with the largest number of MPs, or the leader of a coalition between more than one party, to become the Prime Minister. The monarch has regular meetings with the Prime Minister and can advise, warn and encourage, but the decisions on government policies are made by the Prime Minister and cabinet.

The Queen has reigned since her father's death in 1952, and in 2012 she celebrated her Diamond Jubilee (60 years as queen). She is married to Prince Philip, the Duke of Edinburgh. Her eldest son, Prince Charles (the Prince of Wales), is the heir to the throne.

The Queen has important ceremonial roles, such as the opening of the new parliamentary session each year. On this occasion the Queen makes a speech which summarises the government's policies for the year ahead. All Acts of Parliament are made in her name.

The Queen represents the UK to the rest of the world. She receives foreign ambassadors and high commissioners, entertains visiting heads of state, and makes state visits overseas in support of diplomatic and economic relationships with other countries.

The Queen has an important role in providing stability and continuity. While governments and Prime Ministers change regularly, the Queen continues as head of state. She provides a focus for national identity and pride, which was demonstrated through the celebrations of her Jubilee.

### 5.2.2.1 The National Anthem

The National Anthem of the UK is 'God Save the Queen'. It is played at important national occasions and at events attended by the Queen or the Royal Family. The first verse is:

*'God save our gracious Queen!  
Long live our noble Queen!  
God save the Queen!  
Send her victorious,  
Happy and glorious,  
Long to reign over us,  
God save the Queen!'*

New citizens swear or affirm loyalty to the Queen as part of the citizenship ceremony.

### 5.2.2.2 Oath of allegiance

*'I (name) swear by Almighty God that on becoming a British citizen, I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth the Second, her Heirs and Successors, according to law.'*

英國女王伊麗莎白二世為英國的元首。她也是國家君主或英聯邦內多個國家的元首。英國有一套君主立憲制。這意味著國王或女王不統治該國，但任命民主選舉人民選出的政府。

君主邀請有最多國會議員的黨派的領導者，或多於一個派別的聯盟的領導者成為首相。君主定期會晤首相，並可以建議，提醒和鼓勵首相，但政府政策是由首相和內閣（見「政府」部分）決定。

自她的父親於 1952 年去世，女王上任多年並在 2012 年她慶祝了她的鑽石禧年（作為女王 60 年）。她嫁給了愛丁堡公爵菲利普親王。她的長子查爾斯王子（威爾士親王）是王位繼承人。

女王有重要的禮儀角色，如每年新國會會期開幕。在此日子，女王會作演講，總結政府未來一年的政策。議會法是以她的名義制成。

女王代表英國到世界各地。她迎接外國大使和高級專員，招待來訪的國家元首，並作海外國事訪問以增進與其他國家的外交和經濟關係。

女王在提供穩定性和連續性具有重要作用。雖然政府和首相定期更換，但女王總是繼續擔任國家元首。由她的禧年慶祝活動所見，她為國家提供一個身份認同和自豪的焦點。

### 5.2.2.1 國歌

英國的國歌是《天佑女王》。在國家重要場合，及女王或王室出席活動時便會演奏國歌。第一段歌詞是：

*「上帝拯救我們仁慈的女王！  
萬歲我們高貴的女王！  
上帝保佑女王！  
送她勝利，  
快樂和光榮，  
長期帶領著我們，  
上帝保佑女王！」*

新公民宣誓或確認效忠女王是公民宣誓儀式的一部分。

### 5.2.2.2 效忠宣誓

我（姓名）向全能的上帝宣誓，在成為英國公民，我將根據法律效忠女皇陛下女王伊麗莎白二世，她的後嗣和繼任者。

### 5.2.2.3 Affirmation of allegiance

*'I (name) do solemnly, sincerely and truly declare and affirm that on becoming a British citizen, I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth the Second, her Heirs and Successors, according to law.'*

## 5.2.3 System of government

The system of government in the UK is a parliamentary democracy. The UK is divided into parliamentary constituencies. Voters in each constituency elect their member of Parliament (MP) in a General Election. All of the elected MPs form the House of Commons. Most MPs belong to a political party, and the party with the majority of MPs forms the government. If one party does not get a majority, two parties can join together to form a coalition.



The Houses of Parliament, one of the centres of political life in the UK and a World Heritage Site

### 5.2.3.1 The House of Commons

The House of Commons is regarded as the more important of the two chambers in Parliament because its members are democratically elected. The Prime Minister and almost all the members of the cabinet are members of the House of Commons (MPs). Each MP represents a parliamentary constituency, which is a small area of the country. MPs have a number of different responsibilities. They:

- represent everyone in their constituency
- help to create new laws
- scrutinise and comment on what the government is doing
- debate important national issues.

### 5.2.2.3 效忠誓詞

我(姓名)謹以至誠聲明及確認,在成為英國公民,我將根據法律效忠女皇陛下女王伊麗莎白二世,她的後嗣和繼任者。

## 5.2.3 政府制度

英國政府的制度是議會民主制。英國被劃分為議會選區。每個選區的選民在大選選出議會的議員。所有當選的國會議員組成下議院。大多數國會議員都屬於一個政黨,最多國會議員的政黨組成政府。如果一方不獲得多數,雙方可以聯合起來組成一個聯盟。

國會大廈,英國政治的中心和世界遺產之一

### 5.2.3.1 下議院

下議院被視為議會兩院更重要的部分,因為它的成員都由民選選出。首相和內閣接近所有成員都是下議院的成員。

每個下議院議員代表一個國會選區(該國的一個小區域)。國會議員有許多不同的責任。他們:

- 代表自己的選區內的每個人
- 協助制定新法律
- 審查和評論政府的工作
- 辯論重要的國家議題。

### 5.2.3.2 The House of Lords

Members of the House of Lords, known as peers, are not elected by the people and do not represent a constituency. The role and membership of the House of Lords has changed over the last 50 years.

Until 1958, all peers were:

‘hereditary’, which means they inherited their title, or  
senior judges, or  
bishops of the Church of England.

Since 1958, the Prime Minister has had the power to nominate peers just for their own lifetime. These are called life peers. They have usually had an important career in politics, business, law or another profession. Life peers are appointed by the monarch on the advice of the Prime Minister. They also include people nominated by the leaders of the other main political parties or by an independent Appointments Commission for non-party peers.

Since 1999, hereditary peers have lost the automatic right to attend the House of Lords. They now elect a few of their number to represent them in the House of Lords.

The House of Lords is normally more independent of the government than the House of Commons. It can suggest amendments or propose new laws, which are then discussed by MPs. The House of Lords checks laws that have been passed by the House of Commons to ensure they are fit for purpose. It also holds the government to account to make sure that it is working in the best interests of the people. There are peers who are specialists in particular areas, and their knowledge is useful in making and checking laws. The House of Commons has powers to overrule the House of Lords, but these are not used often.

### 5.2.3.3 The Speaker

Debates in the House of Commons are chaired by the Speaker. This person is the chief Officer of the House of Commons. The Speaker is neutral and does not represent a political party, even though he or she is an MP, represents a constituency and deals with constituents’ problems like any other MP. The Speaker is chosen by other MPs in a secret ballot.

The Speaker keeps order during political debates to make sure the rules are followed. This includes making sure the opposition has a guaranteed amount of time to debate issues which it chooses. The Speaker also represents Parliament on ceremonial occasions.

### 5.2.3.2 上議院

上議院成員被稱為貴族院的代表，不是由人民選舉產生，也不代表一個選區。過去 50 年，上議院的角色和成員已經改變了。

直到 1958 年，所有的貴族院的代表是：

「世襲的」，這意味著他們繼承了他們的標題，或  
高級法官，或  
英國教會的主教。

自 1958 年以來，首相有權力提名非世襲的終身貴族。他們被稱為終身貴族。他們通常在政治、商業、法律或其他專業有傑出成就。終身貴族由君主在首相的建議下冊封。它們還包括了由其他主要政黨領導人或非黨貴族而設的獨立委任委員會提名的人。

自 1999 年以來，世襲貴族失去了自動出席上議院的權力。他們現在選出一些代表出席上議院。

上議院通常比下議院更加獨立於政府。它可以提供修改建議，或提出新的法律，然後由下議院議員進行討論。上議院檢查下議院通過的法律，以確保它們符合目的。上議院也會監察政府以確保政府是以人民的最佳利益為前題。有貴族代表是在特定領域的專家，他們的知識在制定和檢查法中有顯著用。下議院有權力推翻上議院，但這權力不常被使用。

### 5.2.3.3 議長

下議院的辯論是由議長主持。此人是下議院首席官員。即使他或她是一個下議院議員，議長亦會保持中立，不代表任何政黨或代表選區，也不會如其他下議院議員般處理選區選民的問題。該議長是由其他下議院議員通過無記名投票選出。

議長職責是在政治辯論中維護秩序，確保大家遵守規則。這包括確保反對黨（見「政府」部分）有足夠時間辯論他們選擇的議題。議長也在議會各種儀式中代表議會。

## 5.2.3.4 Elections

### UK elections

MPs are elected at a General Election, which is held at least every five years.

If an MP dies or resigns, there will be a fresh election, called a byelection, in his or her constituency.

MPs are elected through a system called 'first past the post'. In each constituency, the candidate who gets the most votes is elected. The government is usually formed by the party that wins the majority of constituencies. If no party wins a majority, two parties may join together to form a coalition.

### 5.2.3.4.1 European parliamentary elections

Elections for the European Parliament are also held every five years. Elected members are called members of the European Parliament (MEPs). Elections to the European Parliament use a system of proportional representation, where seats are allocated to each party in proportion to the total number of votes it has won

### 5.2.3.4.2 Contacting elected members

All elected members have a duty to serve and represent their constituents. You can get contact details for all your representatives and their parties from your local library and from [www.parliament.uk](http://www.parliament.uk). MPs, Assembly members, members of the Scottish Parliament (MSPs) and MEPs are also listed in *The Phone Book*, published by BT, and in *Yellow Pages*.

You can contact MPs by letter or telephone at their constituency Office, or at their Office in the House of Commons: The House of Commons, Westminster, London SW1A 0AA, telephone 020 7729 3000. In addition, many MPs, Assembly members, MSPs and MEPs hold regular local 'surgeries', where constituents can go in person to talk about issues that are of concern to them. These surgeries are often advertised in the local newspaper.

#### Check that you understand

- How democracy has developed in the UK
- What a constitution is and how the UK's constitution is different from those of most other countries
- The role of the monarch
- The role of the House of Commons and House of Lords
- What the Speaker does
- How the UK elects MPs and MEPs

## 5.2.3.4 選舉

下議院議員由全國大選選出，至少每五年要舉行一次。如果一位下議院議員去世或辭職，就要在他/她的選區舉行新一輪選舉，又稱補選。

下議院議員是通過一個「簡單多數選舉制」產生的。在每個選區得票最多的候選人即可成為議員。獲得多數選區席位的政黨組成政府。如果一方不獲得多數，雙方可以聯合起來組成一個聯盟。

### 5.2.3.4.1 歐洲議會選舉

歐洲議會也每五年舉行一次選舉。民選議員被稱為歐洲議會成員(MEPS)。歐洲議會選舉採用比例代表制，席位按各政黨得票總數比例分配給各黨。

### 5.2.3.4.2 聯絡當選議員

所有民選議員有責任服務及代表他們的選區選民。你可以從當地圖書館和 <http://www.parliament.uk> 找到所有代表和他們政黨的聯繫方式。下議院議員，議會議員，蘇格蘭議會成員(MSP's)，歐洲議會議員也被列在英國電信發佈的「電話簿」中，也能在黃頁中找到。

如要聯繫下議院議員，你可以寫信或致電到國會議員選區辦公室，或到他們的下議院辦公室(下議院，西敏宮，倫敦 SW1A0AA，電話 02077293000)。此外，許多下議院議員，議會議員，蘇格蘭議會成員和歐洲議會議員定期舉行地方接待，選民可以親自與議員談論他們關注的問題。這些接待往往會在當地報紙上做宣傳。

#### Check that you understand

- 民主如何在英國發展
- 什麼是憲法，以及英國的憲法與其他大多數國家的不同
- 君主的角色
- 下議院和上議院的作用
- 議長的作用
- 英國如何選出國會議員和歐洲議會議員

## 5.3 The Government

### 5.3.1 The Prime Minister

The Prime Minister (PM) is the leader of the political party in power. He or she appoints the members of the cabinet and has control over many important public appointments. The official home of the Prime Minister is 10 Downing Street, in central London, near the Houses of Parliament. He or she also has a country house outside London called Chequers.

The Prime Minister can be changed if the MPs in the governing party decide to do so, or if he or she wishes to resign. The Prime Minister usually resigns if his or her party loses a General Election.

### 5.3.2 The cabinet

The Prime Minister appoints about 20 senior MPs to become ministers in charge of departments. These include:

Chancellor of the Exchequer – responsible for the economy

Home Secretary – responsible for crime, policing and immigration

Foreign Secretary – responsible for managing relationships with foreign countries

other ministers (called 'Secretaries of State') responsible for subjects such as education, health and defence.

These ministers form the cabinet, a committee which usually meets weekly and makes important decisions about government policy. Many of these decisions have to be debated or approved by Parliament.

Each department also has a number of other ministers, called Ministers of State and Parliamentary Under-Secretaries of State, who take charge of particular areas of the department's work.

## 5.3 政府

### 5.3.1 首相

首相是執政黨的黨魁。他/她任命內閣成員（見下），掌握著許多任命重要公共職位的大權。首相官邸是在倫敦中心靠近議會的唐寧街 10 號。他/她在離倫敦不遠處也有一棟被稱為

的鄉間別墅。在執政黨議員決定或首相自己要求辭職的情況下，也可以更換首相。首相通常在自己的政黨於大選中落敗後自動辭職。

### 5.3.2 內閣

首相會任命大約 20 位高級議會成員為各部門部長。這包括：

財政大臣 – 負責經濟

內政大臣 – 負責調查罪案，維持治安和出入境

外交大臣 – 負責與國外的外交關

其他大臣（所謂的「國務卿」）負責如教育、衛生和國防等方面。

這些部長們組成內閣，是每週開會並對政府施政作出重要決定的小委員會。之後，這些政策決定還需要在議會裡討論或得到通過。

每個部門也有一些其他的部長，被稱為國務部長和政務次官，負責特定範圍的部門工作。

### 5.3.3 The opposition

The second-largest party in the House of Commons is called the opposition. The leader of the opposition usually becomes Prime Minister if his or her party wins the next General Election.

The leader of the opposition leads his or her party in pointing out what they see as the government's failures and weaknesses. One important opportunity to do this is at Prime Minister's Questions, which takes place every week while Parliament is sitting. The leader of the opposition also appoints senior opposition MPs to be 'shadow ministers'. They form the shadow cabinet and their role is to challenge the government and put forward alternative policies.

### 5.3.4 The party system

Anyone aged 18 or over can stand for election as an MP but they are unlikely to win unless they have been nominated to represent one of the major political parties. These are the Conservative Party, the Labour Party, the Liberal Democrats, or one of the parties representing Scottish, Welsh or Northern Irish interests.

There are a few MPs who do not represent any of the main political parties. They are called 'independents' and usually represent an issue important to their constituency.

The main political parties actively look for members of the public to join their debates, contribute to their costs, and help at elections for Parliament or for local government. They have branches in most constituencies and hold policy-making conferences every year.

Pressure and lobby groups are organisations which try to influence government policy. They play an important role in politics. Some are representative organisations such as the CBI (Confederation of British Industry), which represents the views of British business. Others campaign on particular topics, such as the environment (for example, Greenpeace) or human rights (for example, Liberty).

### 5.3.5 The civil service

Civil servants support the government in developing and implementing its policies. They also deliver public services. Civil servants are accountable to ministers. They are chosen on merit and are politically neutral – they are not political appointees. People can apply to join the civil service through an application process, like other jobs in the UK. Civil servants are expected to carry out their role with dedication and a commitment to the civil service and its core values. These are: integrity, honesty, objectivity and impartiality (including being politically neutral).

### 5.3.3 反對黨

下議院的第二大黨被稱為反對黨。如果他或她的政黨贏得下屆大選，反對黨領導人通常會成為首相。

反對黨黨魁帶領其政黨指出政府的失誤或不足。而其重要機會之一就是在每週舉行的議會會議向首相發問時間。反對黨領袖還可以任命反對黨的高級議員來當「影子大臣」。這些人一起組成「影子內閣」，其作用是挑戰政府，並提出替代政策。

### 5.3.4 黨派制度

任何 18 歲以上人士都可以做參選成為國會議員，但是除非他們被提名代表某一大政黨，否則贏得選舉的機會很渺茫。大政黨如保守黨、工黨、自由民主黨、或代表蘇格蘭、威爾士、北愛爾蘭利益的政黨。

只有少數議員不代表任何政黨。他們被稱為「獨立派」。他們通常代表他們的選區的某些重要議題。

主要的政黨積極爭取普通選民參加他們的辯論，捐款、幫助議會或當地政府進行選舉。它們在絕大多數選區都有自己的分部，而且每年舉行政策制定會談。

壓力和遊說團體都是試圖影響政府政策的組織。它們在政治中起了重要作用。一些是代表某群組的組織，如代表英國商界的意見英國工業聯合會（CBI）。其他組織為某主題抗爭，如環境（例如，綠色和平組織）或人權（例如，自由）。

### 5.3.5 公民服務

公務員是支持和執行政府政策的行政人員。他們也負責提供公共服務。公務員受從屬於部長。他們在具有專業知識和能力，在政治上必須保持中立 - 他們不是受政治任命的人。像在英國的其他工作，人們可以通過申請加入成為公務員。公務員都應履行對公共服務及其核心價值觀的奉獻精神和承諾：正直，誠實，客觀和公正（包括政治中立）。

## 5.3.6 Local government

Towns, cities and rural areas in the UK are governed by democratically elected councils, often called 'local authorities'. Some areas have both district and county councils, which have different functions. Most large towns and cities have a single local authority.

Local authorities provide a range of services in their areas. They are funded by money from central government and by local taxes.

Many local authorities appoint a mayor, who is the ceremonial leader of the council. In some towns, a mayor is elected to be the effective leader of the administration. London has 33 local authorities, with the Greater London Authority and the Mayor of London coordinating policies across the capital. For most local authorities, local elections for councillors are held in May every year. Many candidates stand for council election as members of a political party.

## 5.3.7 Devolved administrations

Since 1997, some powers have been devolved from the central government to give people in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland more control over matters that directly affect them. There has been a Welsh Assembly and a Scottish Parliament since 1999. There is also a Northern Ireland Assembly, although this has been suspended on a few occasions.

Policy and laws governing defence, foreign affairs, immigration, taxation and social security all remain under central UK government control. However, many other public services, such as education, are controlled by the devolved administrations.

The devolved administrations each have their own civil service.

### 5.3.7.1 The Welsh government

The Welsh government and National Assembly for Wales are based in Cardiff, the capital city of Wales. The National Assembly has 60 Assembly members (AMs) and elections are held every four years using a form of proportional representation. Members can speak in either Welsh or English and all of the Assembly's publications are in both languages.

The Assembly has the power to make laws for Wales in 20 areas, including:

- education and training
- health and social services
- economic development
- housing.

Since 2011, the National Assembly for Wales has been able to pass laws on these topics without the agreement of the UK Parliament.

## 5.3.6 地方政府

英國的縣鎮、城市和農村地區由民主選舉出來的委員會管理，常稱為地方政府。有的地區既有地區委員會又有縣委員會，但是職能不同。大多數大點的鎮或城市只有一個地方政府。

地方當局在各自領域提供一系列的服務。它們的資金來自中央政府和地方稅收。

許多地方當局委任一名市長作為名義上及儀式上的領導人。但有的市長是負責行政事物的實際領導。倫敦有 33 個地方權力部門，由大倫敦市政府和倫敦市長協調整個首都的政策。大多數地方當局的地方議員選舉在每年五月舉行。很多候選人以政黨成員身份參加議會選舉。

## 5.3.7 權力下放

自 1997 年以來，中央政府已把一些權力下放，讓威爾士、蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭人們在直接影響他們的事務中有更多的支配權。自 1999 年以來出現了威爾士議會和蘇格蘭議會。還有一個斷斷續續的北愛爾蘭議會，但中止過數次。

儘管英國中央政府仍然控制國防、外交事務、移民、稅收和社會保障的決策和法規，如教育等許多公共事務的控制權已經開始下放予地方行政部門管理。

權力下放的地方行政部門有自己的公共服務。

### 5.3.7.1 威爾士政府

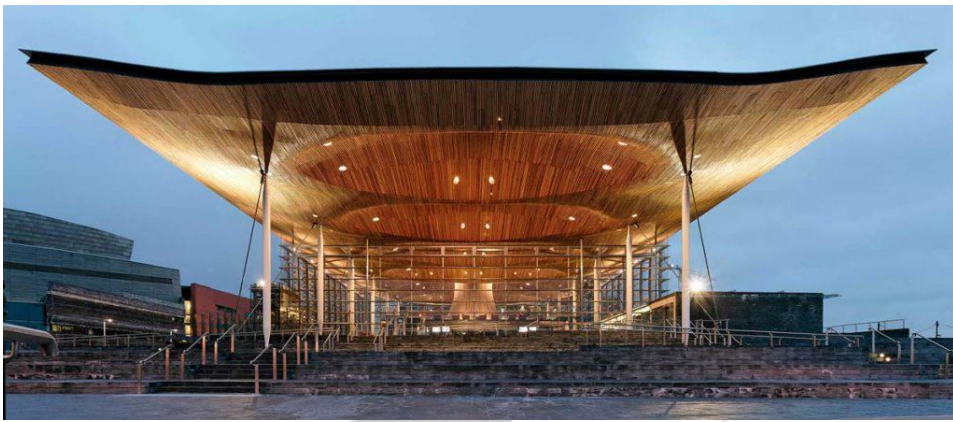
威爾士政府和威爾士國民議會位於威爾士首都卡迪夫。國民議會有 60 個成員席位 ( AM )，每四年進行一次採用比例代表制的選舉。議會成員能說英語或威爾士語，所有的出版物都以兩種語言發行。

議會有權力控制 20 方面的法律，包括：

- 教育與培訓
- 醫療保健和社會服務
- 經濟發展
- 住房。

自 2011 年，威爾士國民議會已經能在沒有英國議會同意下通過這些方面的法律





The Welsh Assembly building, opened in March 2006

### 5.3.7.2 The Scottish Parliament

The Scottish Parliament was formed in 1999. It sits in Edinburgh, the capital city of Scotland.

There are 129 members of the Scottish Parliament (MSPs), elected by a form of proportional representation. The Scottish Parliament can pass laws for Scotland on all matters which are not specifically reserved to the UK Parliament. The matters on which the Scottish Parliament can legislate include:

- civil and criminal law
- health
- education
- planning
- additional tax-raising powers.



The Scottish Parliament Building, opened in October 2004

威爾士議會大樓·2006年3月開幕

### 5.3.7.2 蘇格蘭議會

蘇格蘭議會於1999年成立。它坐落於蘇格蘭的首都愛丁堡。

蘇格蘭議會（MSPS）的129個會員是按比例代表制的形式選出。除英國議會特別保留的項目，蘇格蘭議會可以為蘇格蘭通過任何法律。

蘇格蘭議會可立法的事項包括：

- 民事和刑事法律
- 醫療保健
- 教育
- 規劃
- 提高額外稅款的權力。

蘇格蘭議會大廈·於2004年10月開幕

### 5.3.7.3 The Northern Ireland Assembly

A Northern Ireland Parliament was established in 1922, when Ireland was divided, but it was abolished in 1972, shortly after the Troubles broke out in 1969.

The Northern Ireland Assembly was established soon after the Belfast Agreement (or Good Friday Agreement) in 1998. There is a power-sharing agreement which distributes ministerial Offices amongst the main parties. The Assembly has 108 elected members, known as MLAs (members of the Legislative Assembly). They are elected with a form of proportional representation.

The Northern Ireland Assembly can make decisions on issues such as:

- education
- agriculture
- the environment
- health
- social services.

The UK government has the power to suspend all devolved assemblies. It has used this power several times in Northern Ireland when local political leaders found it difficult to work together. However, the Assembly has been running successfully since 2007.



The Northern Ireland Building, known as Stormont

### 5.3.7.3 北愛爾蘭議會

北愛爾蘭議會於 1922 年愛爾蘭分裂時成立，但在 1972 年緊隨 1969 年北愛爾蘭騷亂（見 55 頁）後被廢除。

北愛爾蘭議會於 1998 年貝爾法斯特協議（或耶穌受難節協議）不久後成立。權力分享的協議把部長權力分配在主要政黨之間。議會有 108 個選舉出的成員，又稱立法議會成員（MLA's）。他們是以比例代表制選出。

北愛爾蘭議會能在這些議題上作出決定：

- 教育
- 農業
- 環境
- 醫療保健
- 社會服務

英國政府有權暫停所有下放的權力。它曾對在北愛爾蘭行使這權力，因地方政治領袖合作有困難。然而，議會自 2007 年一直保持運作暢順。

北愛爾蘭大樓，被稱為斯托蒙特

## 5.3.8 The media and government

Proceedings in Parliament are broadcast on television and published in official reports called *Hansard*. Written reports can be found in large libraries and at [www.parliament.uk](http://www.parliament.uk). Most people get information about political issues and events from newspapers (often called ‘the press’), television, radio and the internet.

The UK has a free press. This means that what is written in newspapers is free from government control. Some newspaper owners and editors hold strong political opinions and run campaigns to try to influence government policy and public opinion.

By law, radio and television coverage of the political parties must be balanced and so equal time has to be given to rival viewpoints.

### Check that you understand

- The role of the Prime Minister, cabinet, opposition and shadow cabinet
- The role of political parties in the UK system of government
- Who the main political parties are
- What pressure and lobby groups do
- The role of the civil service
- The role of local government
- The powers of the devolved governments in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland
- How proceedings in Parliament are recorded
- The role of the media in keeping people informed about political issues

## 5.3.8 媒體和政府

議會的議事記錄會在電視上播放，也會在《英國議會議事錄》的官方報導中發表。書面報告可以在大型圖書館和 [www.parliament.uk](http://www.parliament.uk) 找到。大多數人可從報紙新聞、電視、電台廣播和互聯網獲得有關政治議題和事件的資料。

英國有新聞自由。這意味著報紙上所報導的內容不受政府控制。一些報紙所有者和編輯保持強烈的政治觀，並會組織一些活動試圖影響政府政策和公眾輿論。

根據法律，電台廣播或電視在選舉期間對各政黨的報導應該保持平衡，對立觀點要分配得到相近時間。

### Check that you understand

- 首相、內閣、反對和影子內閣的作用
- 政黨在英國政府體系中的作用
- 有那些主要政黨
- 壓力和遊說團體的作用
- 公務員的角色
- 地方政府的作用
- 威爾士、蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭分權政府的權力
- 議會議事記錄如何被紀錄下來
- 媒體在讓人們了解政治問題中的作用

## 5.3.9 Who can vote?

The UK has had a fully democratic voting system since 1928. The present voting age of 18 was set in 1969 and (with a few exceptions) all UK-born and naturalised adult citizens have the right to vote.

Adult citizens of the UK, and citizens of the Commonwealth and the Irish Republic who are resident in the UK, can vote in all public elections. Adult citizens of other EU states who are resident in the UK can vote in all elections except General Elections.

### 5.3.9.1 The electoral register

To be able to vote in a parliamentary, local or European election, you must have your name on the electoral register.

If you are eligible to vote, you can register by contacting your local council electoral registration Office. This is usually based at your local council (in Scotland it may be based elsewhere). If you don't know which local authority you come under, you can find out by visiting [www.aboutmyvote.co.uk](http://www.aboutmyvote.co.uk) and entering your postcode. You can also download voter registration forms in English, Welsh and some other languages.

The electoral register is updated every year in September or October. An electoral registration form is sent to every household and this has to be completed and returned with the names of everyone who is resident in the household and eligible to vote.

In Northern Ireland a different system operates. This is called 'individual registration' and all those entitled to vote must complete their own registration form. Once registered, people stay on the register provided their personal details do not change. For more information see the Electoral Office for Northern Ireland website at [www.eoni.org.uk](http://www.eoni.org.uk)

By law, each local authority has to make its electoral register available for anyone to look at, although this has to be supervised. The register is kept at each local electoral registration Office (or council Office in England and Wales). It is also possible to see the register at some public buildings such as libraries.

## 5.3.9 誰可以投票？

英國自 1928 年以來就有了一個完善的民主投票制度 ( 見 119-120 )。現在的投票年齡 18 歲是 1969 年設定的，而且 ( 近乎 ) 所有英國出生和歸化的公民都享有投票權利。

英國、英聯邦和居住在英國的愛爾蘭共和國公民可以在所有公共選舉中投票。除了全國性議會選舉以外，居住在英國的歐盟國家公民皆擁有在所有選舉中投票的權利。

### 5.3.9.1 選民登記冊

要參與議會、地方或歐洲選舉中的投票，你必須在選民登記冊上登記名字。

如果你有權投票的話，你可以聯繫你的地方委員會的選舉登記辦公室進行登記。這通常是在當地議會 ( 在蘇格蘭也可能在其他地方 )。如果你不知道地方部門在哪，你可以在 [www.aboutmyvote.co.uk](http://www.aboutmyvote.co.uk) 輸入郵政編碼找到相關資料。你也可以在互聯網上下載英語、威爾士語和其他語言的登記表。

選舉登記每年 9 月或 10 月舉行。選民登記表被寄到每個家庭，合資格投票的家庭成員的名字必須在該表格中標明，填寫完整併寄回。

在北愛爾蘭採用另一種制度。這稱為「個體註冊」，即所有有權利投票的人必須填寫自己的登記表。一旦註冊，只要你的個人資料沒有改變，你就會一直保留在登記簿中。欲了解更多信息，請參閱北愛爾蘭選舉事務處網站 [www.eoni.org.uk](http://www.eoni.org.uk)

根據法律，每一個地方政府必須允許所有人查看選民名冊，但是現在必須在有人監督的情況下進行。選民名冊保存在各地方選民登記辦公室 ( 在英格蘭和威爾士是當地政府辦公室 )。有時也可以在某些公共建築如圖書館裡查到選民名冊。

## 5.3.10 Where to vote

People vote in elections at places called polling stations, or polling places in Scotland. Before the election you will be sent a poll card. This tells you where your polling station or polling place is and when the election will take place. On election day, the polling station or place will be open from 7.00 am until 10.00 pm.

When you arrive at the polling station, the staff will ask for your name and address. In Northern Ireland you will also have to show photographic identification. You will then get your ballot paper, which you take to a polling booth to fill in privately. You should make up your own mind who to vote for. No one has the right to make you vote for a particular candidate. You should follow the instructions on the ballot paper. Once you have completed it, put it in the ballot box.

If it is difficult for you to get to a polling station or polling place, you can register for a postal ballot. Your ballot paper will be sent to your home before the election. You then fill it in and post it back. You can choose to do this when you register to vote.

## 5.3.11 Standing for office

Most citizens of the UK, the Irish Republic or the Commonwealth aged 18 or over can stand for public Office. There are some exceptions, including:

- members of the armed forces
- civil servants
- people found guilty of certain criminal offences.

Members of the House of Lords may not stand for election to the House of Commons but are eligible for all other public Offices.

## 5.3.12 Visiting Parliament and the devolved administrations

### 5.3.12.1 The UK Parliament

The public can listen to debates in the Palace of Westminster from public galleries in both the House of Commons and the House of Lords.

You can write to your local MP in advance to ask for tickets or you can queue on the day at the public entrance. Entrance is free. Sometimes there are long queues for the House of Commons and people have to wait for at least one to two hours. It is usually easier to get in to the House of Lords.

You can find further information on the UK Parliament website at [www.parliament.uk](http://www.parliament.uk).

## 5.3.10 往哪裡投票

人們在投票站進行投票。在大選前你將收到投票通知卡，告訴你你的投票站的地點和投票時間。在選舉日，投票站的開放時間為上午 7 時至下午 10 時。

當您到達投票站，工作人員會詢問你的姓名和地址。在北愛爾蘭，你還須出示有照片的身份證明。之後你會得到選票，並到其中一個投票攤位私下填寫。你應該作好決定投票支持誰人。沒有人有權使你投票支持某候選人。你應該按照選票上的說明進行投票，一旦完成，請把它放在投票箱。

假如你很難去到一個投票站，你可以註冊以郵遞投票。你的選票將在大選前發送到你的家，然後填寫及寄回。你可以在登記投票時選擇這方式。

## 5.3.11 競選公職

絕大多數年滿 18 歲以上的英國、愛爾蘭共和國或任何英聯邦的公民都可以競選公職。但不包括：

- 軍隊服役人員
- 公務員
- 觸犯刑律的人

上院的議員不能做下院議員的候選人，但可以候選其它一切公職。

## 5.3.12 參觀國家議會和分權後的地方行政部門

### 5.3.12.1 英國議會

公眾可以在西敏宮的上議院和下議院的公共樓座裡聆聽辯論。

你可以事先給地方議員寫信拿票，也可以當天在公眾入口住排隊。參觀是免費的。有時在下院排的隊很長，你可能的等至少 1 到 2 小時。進上院就會容易很多。

你可以在英國議會網站找到更多信息：[www.parliament.uk](http://www.parliament.uk)

### 5.3.12.2 Northern Ireland Assembly

In Northern Ireland elected members, known as MLAs, meet in the Northern Ireland Assembly at Stormont, in Belfast.

There are two ways to arrange a visit to Stormont. You can either contact the Education Service (details are on the Northern Ireland Assembly website at [www.niassembly.gov.uk](http://www.niassembly.gov.uk)) or contact an MLA.

### 5.3.12.3 Scottish Parliament

In Scotland the elected members, called MSPs, meet in the Scottish Parliament building at Holyrood in Edinburgh (for more information, see [www.scottish.parliament.uk](http://www.scottish.parliament.uk)).

You can get information, book tickets or arrange tours through visitor services. You can write to them at the Scottish Parliament, Edinburgh, EH99 1SP, telephone 0131 348 5200 or email [sp.bookings@scottish.parliament.uk](mailto:sp.bookings@scottish.parliament.uk)

### 5.3.12.4 National Assembly for Wales

In Wales the elected members, known as AMs, meet in the Welsh Assembly in the Senedd in Cardiff Bay (for more information, see [www.wales.gov.uk](http://www.wales.gov.uk)).

The Senedd is an open building. You can book guided tours or seats in the public galleries for the Welsh Assembly. To make a booking, contact the Assembly Booking Service on 0845 010 5500 or email [assembly.bookings@wales.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:assembly.bookings@wales.gsi.gov.uk)

#### Check that you understand

- Who is eligible to vote
- How you register to vote
- How to vote
- Who can stand for public Office
- How you can visit Parliament, the Northern Ireland Assembly, the Scottish Parliament and the Welsh Assembly

### 5.3.12.2 北愛爾蘭議會

在北愛爾蘭，選舉出來的北愛爾蘭議會議員（稱為 MLA's）在貝爾法斯特的斯托蒙特的北愛爾蘭議會開會。

參觀斯托蒙特的方法有兩種。你可以聯繫教育服務部門（詳情請到北愛爾蘭議會網頁 [www.niassembly.gov.uk](http://www.niassembly.gov.uk)）或聯繫某北愛爾蘭議會議員。

### 5.3.12.3 蘇格蘭議會

在蘇格蘭，選舉出來的蘇格蘭議會成員（簡稱為 MSP）在愛丁堡荷里路德的蘇格蘭議會上開會。（詳情請到蘇格蘭議會網頁 [www.scottish.parliament.uk](http://www.scottish.parliament.uk)）。

你可以在訪客服務找到資料，預訂門票或安排參觀。你可以寫信到蘇格蘭議會，愛丁堡，EH991SP，電話 01313485200 或電郵 [sp.bookings@scottish.parliament.uk](mailto:sp.bookings@scottish.parliament.uk)

### 5.3.12.4 威爾士議會

在威爾士，選舉出來的成員稱為威爾士議會議員（簡稱為 AM）在卡迪夫灣參議院（Senedd 大樓）的威爾士議會開會。

參議院（Senedd 大樓）是向公眾開放。你可以預訂威爾士議會公眾席的導覽遊或席位。如需預訂，請致電 08450105500 或電郵 [assembly.bookings@wales.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:assembly.bookings@wales.gsi.gov.uk) 聯絡議會的預訂服務。

#### Check that you understand

- 誰有資格投票
- 如何登記投票
- 如何投票
- 誰可以擔任公職
- 如何參觀議會，北愛爾蘭

## 5.4 The UK and International Institutions

### 5.4.1 The Commonwealth

The Commonwealth is an association of countries that support each other and work together towards shared goals in democracy and development. Most member states were once part of the British Empire, although a few countries which were not have also joined.

The Queen is the ceremonial head of the Commonwealth, which currently has 54 member states. Membership is voluntary. The Commonwealth has no power over its members, although it can suspend membership. The Commonwealth is based on the core values of democracy, good government and the rule of law.

#### Commonwealth members

Antigua and Barbuda	Jamaica	Seychelles
Australia	Kenya	Sierra Leone
The Bahamas	Kiribati	Singapore
Bangladesh	Lesotho	Solomon Islands
Barbados	Malawi	South Africa
Belize	Malaysia	Sri Lanka
Botswana	Maldives	St Kitts and Nevis
Brunei Darussalam	Malta	St Lucia
Cameroon	Mauritius	St Vincent and the Grenadines
Canada	Mozambique	Swaziland
Cyprus	Namibia	Tanzania
Dominica	Nauru	Tonga
Fiji (currently suspended)	New Zealand	Trinidad and Tobago
The Gambia	Nigeria	Tuvalu
Ghana	Pakistan	Uganda
Grenada	Papua New Guinea	UK
Guyana	Rwanda	Vanuatu
India	Samoa	Zambia

## 5.4 英國和國際機構

### 5.4.1 英聯邦

英聯邦是一些國家的聯盟，這些國家互相支持和與對方合作以達成民主和發展的共同目標。這些盟國多數曾經是英帝國的成員，雖然有些成員國以前並不是帝國的一部分，只是後來才加入。

女王是由 54 個成員國構成的英聯邦的儀式領導。成員資格屬自願性質。英聯邦不能控制任何成員國，但可以終止成員的資格。英聯邦的核心價值是促進民主，改進政府和法治。

#### 英聯邦成員國

安提瓜和巴布達	牙買加	塞舌爾
澳洲	肯尼亞	塞拉利昂
巴哈馬	基里巴斯	新加坡
孟加拉國	萊索托	所羅門群島
巴巴多斯	馬拉維	南非
伯利茲	馬來西亞	斯里蘭卡
博茨瓦納	馬爾代夫	聖基茨和尼維斯
文萊達魯薩蘭國	馬耳他	聖盧西亞
喀麥隆	毛里求斯	聖文森特和格林納丁斯
加拿大	莫桑比克	斯威士蘭
塞浦路斯	納米比亞	坦桑尼亞
多米尼加	諾魯	湯加
斐濟 (目前中止)	新西蘭	特里尼達和多巴哥
岡比亞	尼日利亞	圖瓦盧
加納	巴基斯坦	烏干達
格林納達	巴布亞新幾內亞	英國
圭亞那	盧旺達	瓦努阿圖
印度	薩摩亞	贊比亞

## 5.4.2 The European Union

The European Union (EU), originally called the European Economic Community (EEC), was set up by six western European countries (Belgium, France, Germany, Italy, Luxembourg and the Netherlands) who signed the Treaty of Rome on 25 March 1957. The UK originally decided not to join this group but it became a member in 1973. There are now 27 EU member states. Croatia will also become a member state in 2013.

EU law is legally binding in ~~the UK and~~ all the other EU member states. European laws are called directives, regulations or framework decisions.

### EU member states

Austria 奧地利	Germany 德國	Netherlands 荷蘭
Belgium 比利時	Greece 希臘	Poland 波蘭
Bulgaria 保加利亞	Hungary 匈牙利	Portugal 葡萄牙
Cyprus 塞浦路斯	Ireland 愛爾蘭	Romania 羅馬尼亞
Czech Republic 捷克共和國	Italy 意大利	Slovakia 斯洛伐克
Denmark 丹麥	Latvia 拉脫維亞	Slovenia 斯洛文尼亞
Estonia 愛沙尼亞	Lithuania 立陶宛	Spain 西班牙
Finland 芬蘭	Luxembourg 盧森堡	Sweden 瑞典
France 法國	Malta 馬耳他	<del>UK</del> 英國

## 5.4.2 歐盟

歐盟（EU）始於歐洲經濟共同體（EEC），由 6 個西歐國家（比利時、法國、德國、意大利、盧森堡和荷蘭）於 1957 年 3 月 25 日簽訂《羅馬協議》而成。一開始時，英國決定不加入這一組織，直到 1973 年才成為歐盟成員。2013 年這歐盟共有 27 個成員國。克羅地亞也將在 2013 年成為成員國。

歐盟法律適用於英國及其他成員國。歐盟法律又稱為指令、規章或框架性決定。

### 歐盟成員



### 5.4.3 The Council of Europe

The Council of Europe is separate from the EU. It has 47 member countries, including the UK, and is responsible for the protection and promotion of human rights in those countries. It has no power to make laws but draws up conventions and charters, the most well-known of which is the European Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms, usually called the European Convention on Human Rights.

### 5.4.4 The United Nations

The UK is part of the United Nations (UN), an international organisation with more than 190 countries as members. The UN was set up after the Second World War and aims to prevent war and promote international peace and security. There are 15 members on the UN Security Council, which recommends action when there are international crises and threats to peace. The UK is one of five permanent members of the Security Council.

### 5.4.5 The North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)

The UK is also a member of NATO. NATO is a group of European and North American countries that have agreed to help each other if they come under attack. It also aims to maintain peace between all of its members.

#### Check that you understand

- What the Commonwealth is and its role
- Other international organisations of which the UK is a member

### 5.4.3 歐洲理事會

歐洲理事會是獨立於歐盟。它有 47 個成員國，包括英國，並負責在這些國家保護和促進人權。它沒有制定法律的權力，但可以擬定公約和章程。這些公約和章程中最重要的是《歐洲保障人權和基本自由公約》，又稱為《歐洲人權公約》。

### 5.4.4 聯合國

英國是聯合國的成員，該國際組織目前在世界上有 190 個成員國。聯合國於第二次世界大戰後成立，目的是防止戰爭，促進國際和平與安全。聯合國安全理事會有 15 個成員，在國際危機或威脅和平時提出行動建議。英國是 5 個常任理事國之一。

### 5.4.5 北大西洋公約組織 (北約)

英國也是北約成員。北約由歐洲和北美國家組成，成員同意一旦成員國受到攻擊下互相幫助。它的目的在於維護其所有成員之間的和平。

#### Check that you understand

- 英聯邦是什麼和它的角色
- 英國有參與其中的國際組織

## 5.5 Respecting the Law

One of the most important responsibilities of all residents in the UK is to know and obey the law. This section will tell you about the legal system in the UK and some of the laws that may affect you. Britain is proud of being a welcoming country, but all residents, regardless of their background, are expected to comply with the law and to understand that some things which may be allowed in other legal systems are not acceptable in the UK. Those who do not respect the law should not expect to be allowed to become permanent residents in the UK.

The law is relevant to all areas of life in the UK. You should make sure that you are aware of the laws which affect your everyday life, including both your personal and business affairs.

### 5.5.1 The law in the UK

Every person in the UK receives equal treatment under the law. This means that the law applies in the same way to everyone, no matter who they are or where they are from.

Laws can be divided into criminal law and civil law:

- Criminal law relates to crimes, which are usually investigated by the police or another authority such as a council, and which are punished by the courts.
- Civil law is used to settle disputes between individuals or groups.

Examples of criminal laws are:

- Carrying a weapon: it is a criminal offence to carry a weapon of any kind, even if it is for self-defence. This includes a gun, a knife or anything that is made or adapted to cause injury.
- Drugs: selling or buying drugs such as heroin, cocaine, ecstasy and cannabis is illegal in the UK.
- Racial crime: it is a criminal offence to cause harassment, alarm or distress to someone because of their religion or ethnic origin.
- Selling tobacco: it is illegal to sell tobacco products (for example, cigarettes, cigars, roll-up tobacco) to anyone under the age of 18.
- Smoking in public places: it is against the law to smoke tobacco products in nearly every enclosed public place in the UK. There are signs displayed to tell you where you cannot smoke.
- Buying alcohol: it is a criminal offence to sell alcohol to anyone who is under 18 or to buy alcohol for people who are under the age of 18. (There is one exception: people aged 16 or over can drink alcohol with a meal in a hotel or restaurant.)

## 5.5 尊重法律

所有英國居民其中一項最重要的職責是了解並遵守法律。本節將告訴你英國的法律制度和一些可能影響你的法律。英國為它的殷勤而自豪，但所有居民不論其背景，將要遵守法律，並要明白有些在其他法律制度下允許的事情也許在英國是不能接受的。那些不尊重法律的人將不要期望可獲准成為英國永久居民。

法律與英國生活的各個領域息息相關。你應該確保你知道影響日常生活的法律，包括個人和商業事務。

### 5.5.1 英國法律

在英國每個人接受國法平等的待遇。這意味著，法律以同樣的方式對待每個人，不管他們是誰或從何來。

法律可分為刑事法和民事法：

- 刑法涉及到犯罪，這通常是由警察或如議會等其他部門調查，並由法院懲處。
- 民法是用來解決個人或團體之間的糾紛

刑事法的例子有：

- 攜帶武器：攜帶任何種類的武器，即使是為了自衛，也是一種刑事罪行。這包括槍、刀，或任何製造或改裝以致可引致他人受傷的東西。
- 藥物：銷售或購買毒品，如海洛因、可卡因、搖頭丸及大麻在英國是非法的。
- 種族犯罪：因為人們的宗教或族裔而對別人造成騷擾、驚恐或困擾是刑事罪行。
- 銷售煙草：向 18 歲以下人士出售煙草產品（例如香煙、雪茄、捲起煙草）屬於違法。
- 在公眾場所吸煙：在幾乎所有的英國室內公共場所吸煙是違法的。有告示會告訴你哪裡不能抽煙。
- 購買酒精：向 18 歲以下人士出售酒精或為 18 歲以下人士購買酒精均是刑事（有一個例外：16 歲或以上的人可以在酒店或餐廳進餐時喝酒 - 請參閱 106 頁）

- Drinking in public: some places have alcohol-free zones where you cannot drink in public. The police can also confiscate alcohol or move young people on from public places. You can be fined or arrested.

This list does not include all crimes. There are many that apply in most countries, such as murder, theft and assault. You can find out more about types of crime in the UK at [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk).

Examples of civil laws are:

- Housing law: this includes disputes between landlords and tenants over issues such as repairs and eviction.
- Consumer rights: an example of this is a dispute about faulty goods or services.
- Employment law: these cases include disputes over wages and cases of unfair dismissal or discrimination in the workplace.
- Debt: people might be taken to court if they owe money to someone.

## 5.5.2 The police and their duties

The job of the police in the UK is to:

- protect life and property
- prevent disturbances (also known as keeping the peace)
- prevent and detect crime.

The police are organised into a number of separate police forces headed by Chief Constables. They are independent of the government.

In November 2012, the public elected Police and Crime Commissioners (PCCs) in England and Wales. These are directly elected individuals who are responsible for the delivery of an efficient and effective police force that reflects the needs of their local communities. PCCs set local police priorities and the local policing budget. They also appoint the Chief Constable.



The police in the UK protect life and property, prevent disturbances, and prevent and detect crime

- 在公眾場所喝酒：有些地方有禁酒精區域，你不能在那些公共地方喝酒。警方還可以沒收酒精或把年輕人帶離公共場所。你可能會被罰款或逮捕

這列表不包括所有罪行。許多罪行如謀殺、盜竊和襲擊於大多數國家同樣屬違法。你可以在 [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk) 找到更多關於的英國犯罪類型。

民事法的例子有：

- 房屋法：這包括了業主與租客之間有關維修及搬遷等問題的糾紛
- 消費者權利：這方面的一個例子是有關有缺陷的商品或服務的爭議
- 僱傭法：包括了工資糾紛、不公平解僱或工作場所的歧視等案件
- 債務：如果他們欠別人錢，人們可能會被送上法庭
- 

## 5.5.2 警察和他們的職責

警方在英國的工作是：

- 保護市民的生命和財產
- 防止騷亂（也稱為維持和平）
- 防止和偵查罪案

警察被組織成一系列由警察局長為首的警察部隊。它們是獨立於政府的。

2012 年 11 月，大眾在英格蘭和威爾士推選了警察及罪案專員 (PCCs)。他們都是直接由選舉產生的，負責確保警察部隊能有效率地運作並反映當地社區的需要。警察及罪案專員制訂當地警方首要行動項目和當地保安的預算。他們還任命當地警察局長。

英國警察保護人們生命和財產，防止騷亂，並防止和偵查罪案。

The police force is a public service that helps and protects everyone, no matter what their background or where they live. Police Officers must themselves obey the law. They must not misuse their authority, make a false statement, be rude or abusive, or commit racial discrimination. If police Officers are corrupt or misuse their authority they are severely punished.

Police Officers are supported by police community support Officers (PSCOs). PSCOs have different roles according to the area but usually patrol the streets, work with the public, and support police Officers at crime scenes and major events.

All people in the UK are expected to help the police prevent and detect crimes whenever they can. If you are arrested and taken to a police station, a police Officer will tell you the reason for your arrest and you will be able to seek legal advice.

If something goes wrong, the police complaints system tries to put it right. Anyone can make a complaint about the police by going to a police station or writing to the Chief Constable of the police force involved. Complaints can also be made to an independent body: the Independent Police Complaints Commission in England and Wales, the Police Complaints Commissioner for Scotland or the Police Ombudsman for Northern Ireland.

### 5.5.3 Terrorism and extremism

The UK faces a range of terrorist threats. The most serious of these is from Al Qa'ida, its affiliates and like-minded organisations. The UK also faces threats from other kinds of terrorism, such as Northern Ireland-related terrorism.

All terrorist groups try to radicalise and recruit people to their cause. How, where and to what extent they try to do so will vary. Evidence shows that these groups attract very low levels of public support, but people who want to make their home in the UK should be aware of this threat. It is important that all citizens feel safe. This includes feeling safe from all kinds of extremism (vocal or active opposition to fundamental British values), including religious extremism and far-right extremism.

If you think someone is trying to persuade you to join an extremist or terrorist cause, you should notify your local police force.

#### Check that you understand

- The difference between civil and criminal law and some examples of each
- The duties of the police
- The possible terrorist threats facing the UK

警察部隊是一項公共服務，負責幫助和保護每一個人，不論他們的背景或身住何處。警官自己必須遵守法律。他們絕不能濫用自己的權力，作出虛假陳述、無禮或辱罵，或種族歧視。如果警務人員貪污或濫用他們的權力，他們會受到嚴厲的懲罰。

警員得到警方社區支援員 ( PCSO' s ) 的支持。警方社區支援員因應該地區而有不同的角色，但平時上街巡邏，服務公眾，並在犯罪現場和大型活動支援警察。

在英國，所有的人都應在能力所及下協助警方防止及偵查罪案。如果你被逮捕並帶到警局，警務人員會告訴你被逮捕的原因，你亦可以尋求法律意見。

如果出現問題，警察投訴系統會試圖糾正問題。任何人都可以通過親身到警署或以書面形式向警察局長作關於警察服務的投訴。也可以向一個獨立機構或人仕投訴：在英格蘭和威爾士的獨立警署投訴委員會，蘇格蘭的警察投訴專員或北愛爾蘭的警方申訴專員。

### 5.5.3 恐怖主義和極端主義

英國面臨一系列潛在恐怖威脅。最嚴重的是來自阿蓋達組織，其分會和與它志同道合的組織。英國也面臨其他類型的恐怖主義威脅，如與北愛爾蘭有關的恐怖主義。

所有恐怖組織試圖激化和招募人們加入。它們如何，在何處及程度上有所不同。有證據表示這些團體只有非常低水平的公眾支持，但想移居英國的人應該要小心這種威脅。所有公民感到安全是非常重要的。這包括受保障免被各種極端主義( 反對英國基本價值觀的意見或活動 )，包括宗教極端主義和極右翼極端主義所傷害。

如果你認為有人試圖說服你加入極端分子或恐怖分子，你應該通知當地的警察部門。

#### Check that you understand

- 民事和刑事法律的區別和各自的例子
- 警察的職責
- 英國可能面臨的潛在恐怖威脅

## 5.6 The Role of the Courts

### 5.6.1 The judiciary

Judges (who are together called ‘the judiciary’) are responsible for interpreting the law and ensuring that trials are conducted fairly. The government cannot interfere with this.

Sometimes the actions of the government are claimed to be illegal. If the judges agree, then the government must either change its policies or ask Parliament to change the law. If judges find that a public body is not respecting someone’s legal rights, they can order that body to change its practices and/or pay compensation. Judges also make decisions in disputes between members of the public or organisations. These might be about contracts, property or employment rights or after an accident.

### 5.6.2 Criminal courts

There are some differences between the court systems in England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.

#### 5.6.2.1 Magistrates’ and Justice of the Peace Courts

In England, Wales and Northern Ireland, most minor criminal cases are dealt with in a Magistrates’ Court. In Scotland, minor criminal offences go to a Justice of the Peace Court.

Magistrates and Justices of the Peace (JPs) are members of the local community. In England, Wales and Scotland they usually work unpaid and do not need legal qualifications. They receive training to do the job and are supported by a legal adviser. Magistrates decide the verdict in each case that comes before them and, if the person is found guilty, the sentence that they are given. In Northern Ireland, cases are heard by a District Judge or Deputy District Judge, who is legally qualified and paid.

### 5.6.3 Crown Courts and Sheriff Courts

In England, Wales and Northern Ireland, serious offences are tried in front of a judge and a jury in a Crown Court. In Scotland, serious cases are heard in a Sheriff Court with either a sheriff or a sheriff with a jury. The most serious cases in Scotland, such as murder, are heard at a High Court with a judge and jury. A jury is made up of members of the public chosen at random from the local electoral register. In England, Wales and Northern Ireland a jury has 12 members, and in Scotland a jury has 15 members. Everyone who is summoned to do jury service must do it unless they are not eligible (for example, because they have a criminal conviction) or they provide a good reason to be excused, such as ill health.

The jury has to listen to the evidence presented at the trial and then decide a verdict of ‘guilty’ or ‘not guilty’ based on what they have heard. In Scotland, a third verdict of ‘not proven’ is also possible. If the jury finds a defendant guilty, the judge decides on the penalty.

## 5.6 法院的作用

### 5.6.1 司法系統

法官，合稱「司法機構」負責闡釋法律，並確保審判公平進行。政府不能干預。有時候，政府的行動會被稱是違法的。如果法官同意，政府就必須要改變其政策或要求國會修改法律。如果法官發現有公共機構不尊重他人的合法權利，他們可以命令該機構改變其做法和/或賠償。

法官亦會在公眾之間或組織成員之間的糾紛作出裁決。這些糾紛可能是關於合同、財產或就業權利或事故之後。

### 5.6.2 刑事法庭

英格蘭和威爾士，及蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭之間的法院系統有一些差異。

#### 5.6.2.1 裁判法院和治安法院

在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭，最輕微的刑事案件在裁判法院審理。在蘇格蘭，輕微刑事罪在治安法院審理。

地方法官和太平紳士是當地社區的成員。在英格蘭、威爾士和蘇格蘭，他們的工作通常沒有報酬，也不需要法律資格。他們接受訓練以完成這項工作，並有法律顧問的支援。裁判官決定每個他們審理的案件的最終判決，如果被告人被判有罪，裁判官也會裁定判刑。在北愛爾蘭，案件由區域法院法官或法院暫委法官審理，他們都具合法資格和受薪的。

### 5.6.3 皇室法院和郡法院

在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭，嚴重的罪行都在皇室法庭的法官和陪審團面前審理。在蘇格蘭，嚴重案件在郡法院由郡法官或郡法官與陪審團審理。在蘇格蘭最嚴重的案件，例如謀殺，在高等法院由法官和陪審團審理。陪審團是從本地選民登記冊隨機抽樣選出市民組成。在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭，陪審團共有 12 名成員，在蘇格蘭陪審團則有 15 名成員。除非他們沒有資格（例如，因為他們有刑事定罪），或者他們提供正當的理由，如健康欠佳，所有被傳召作為陪審員的人必須履行這義務。

陪審團必須聽取在審案中提出的證據，然後再基於他們聽到的證據及陳述決定「有罪」或「無罪」的裁決。在蘇格蘭，第三種判決「沒證明」也是有可能的。如果陪審團認定被告有罪，法官就會決定刑罰。

### 5.6.3.1 Youth Courts

In England, Wales and Northern Ireland, if an accused person is aged 10 to 17, the case is normally heard in a Youth Court in front of up to three specially trained magistrates or a District Judge. The most serious cases will go to the Crown Court. The parents or carers of the young person are expected to attend the hearing. Members of the public are not allowed in Youth Courts, and the name or photographs of the accused young person cannot be published in newspapers or used by the media.

In Scotland a system called the Children's Hearings System is used to deal with children and young people who have committed an offence.

Northern Ireland has a system of youth conferencing to consider how a child should be dealt with when they have committed an offence.

## 5.6.4 Civil courts

County Courts deal with a wide range of civil disputes. These include people trying to get back money that is owed to them, cases involving personal injury, family matters, breaches of contract, and divorce. In Scotland, most of these matters are dealt with in the Sheriff Court. More serious civil cases – for example, when a large amount of compensation is being claimed – are dealt with in the High Court in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. In Scotland, they are dealt with in the Court of Session in Edinburgh.

### 5.6.4.1 The small claims procedure

The small claims procedure is an informal way of helping people to settle minor disputes without spending a lot of time and money using a lawyer. This procedure is used for claims of less than £5,000 in England and Wales and £3,000 in Scotland and Northern Ireland. The hearing is held in front of a judge in an ordinary room, and people from both sides of the dispute sit around a table. Small claims can also be issued online through Money Claims Online ([www.moneyclaim.gov.uk](http://www.moneyclaim.gov.uk)).

You can get details about the small claims procedure from your local County Court or Sheriff Court. Details of your local court can be found as follows:

England and Wales: at [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk)

Scotland: at [www.scotcourts.gov.uk](http://www.scotcourts.gov.uk)

Northern Ireland: at [www.courtsni.gov.uk](http://www.courtsni.gov.uk)

### 5.6.3.1 少年法庭

在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭，如果被告是 10 至 17 歲的情況下，案件通常是在少年法庭由三名受過專門訓練的裁判官或區域法院法官審理。最嚴重的案件會送到刑事法庭。父母或少年的監護人將要出席聽證會。市民不允許在少年法庭聽證，少年被告人的名字或照片不能在報章刊登或讓媒體使用。

在蘇格蘭，一個名為兒童聽證制度的系統用來處理觸犯法例的兒童和青少年。

北愛爾蘭有一青年司法會議的制度，以考慮如何處理觸犯法例的兒童。

## 5.6.4 民事法庭

縣法院處理範圍廣泛的民事糾紛。包括人們試圖追討欠款，涉及人身傷害、家庭事務、違反合同、和離婚等案件。在蘇格蘭，大部分的這些問題都是在郡法院處理。更嚴重的民事案件，例如追討大額賠償量時，都是在英格蘭、威爾士和北愛爾蘭的高等法院處理。在蘇格蘭，這些案件是在愛丁堡的高等民事法院審理。

### 5.6.4.1 小額追討程序

小額追討程序是一個幫助人們在無需花大量時間和律師費的情況下，解決輕微糾紛的非正式途徑。這個程序適用於在英格蘭和威爾士少於 5000 英鎊和在蘇格蘭和北愛爾蘭少於 3000 英鎊的的索賠。在一個普通的房間內，雙方的人圍坐在一張桌子在法官面前進行討論。網上小額錢債索償服務 ([www.moneyclaim.gov.uk](http://www.moneyclaim.gov.uk)) 也提供小額索賠網上服務。

你可以從當地縣法院或郡法院獲得關於小額訴訟程序的詳細信息。當地法院細節如下：

英格蘭和威爾士：在 [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk)

蘇格蘭：在 [www.scotcourts.gov.uk](http://www.scotcourts.gov.uk)

北愛爾蘭：在 [www.courtsni.gov.uk](http://www.courtsni.gov.uk)

## 5.6.5 Legal advice

### 5.6.5.1 Solicitors

Solicitors are trained lawyers who give advice on legal matters, take action for their clients and represent their clients in court.

There are solicitors' Offices throughout the UK. It is important to find out which aspects of law a solicitor specialises in and to check that they have the right experience to help you with your case. Many advertise in local newspapers and in Yellow Pages. The Citizens Advice Bureau ([www.citizensadvice.org.uk](http://www.citizensadvice.org.uk)) can give you names of local solicitors and which areas of law they specialise in. You can also get this information from the Law Society ([www.lawsociety.org.uk](http://www.lawsociety.org.uk)) in England and Wales, the Law Society of Scotland ([www.lawscot.org.uk](http://www.lawscot.org.uk)) or the Law Society of Northern Ireland ([www.lawsoc-ni.org](http://www.lawsoc-ni.org)). Solicitors' charges are usually based on how much time they spend on a case. It is very important to find out at the start how much a case is likely to cost.

#### Check that you understand

- The role of the judiciary
- About the different criminal courts in the UK
- About the different civil courts in the UK
- How you can settle a small claim

## 5.6.5 法律諮詢

### 5.6.5.1 事務律師

事務律師是受過訓練的律師，在法律問題上提供建議，為他們的客戶採取法律行動，並在法庭上代表他們的當事人。

事務律師辦事處遍佈英國。找出事務律師擅長哪一個方面的法律，並檢查他們是否有合適經驗去幫助你是非常重要的。

很多事務律師會在當地報紙和黃頁登廣告。公民諮詢局 ([www.citizensadvice.org.uk](http://www.citizensadvice.org.uk)) 可以提供當地律師的名字和他們專門的法律領域。你也可以從在英國和威爾士的律師會 ([www.lawsociety.org.uk](http://www.lawsociety.org.uk))、蘇格蘭律師會 ([www.lawscot.org.uk](http://www.lawscot.org.uk)) 或北愛爾蘭律師會 ([www.lawsoc-ni.org](http://www.lawsoc-ni.org)) 得到這些信息。律師通常按他們在案件所花費的時間收費。在開始使用律師服務前你應大概了解你的案件的律師費。

#### Check that you understand

- 司法機關的角色
- 關於英國不同的刑事法庭
- 關於英國不同的民事法庭
- 如何解決小額索賠

## 5.7 Fundamental Principles

Britain has a long history of respecting an individual's rights and ensuring essential freedoms. These rights have their roots in Magna Carta, the Habeas Corpus Act and the Bill of Rights of 1689, and they have developed over a period of time. British diplomats and lawyers had an important role in drafting the European Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms. The UK was one of the first countries to sign the Convention in 1950.

Some of the principles included in the European Convention on Human Rights are:

- right to life
- prohibition of torture
- prohibition of slavery and forced labour
- right to liberty and security
- right to a fair trial
- freedom of thought, conscience and religion
- freedom of expression (speech).

The Human Rights Act 1998 incorporated the European Convention on Human Rights into UK law. The government, public bodies and the courts must follow the principles of the Convention.

### 5.7.1 Equal opportunities

UK laws ensure that people are not treated unfairly in any area of life or work because of their age, disability, sex, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sexuality or marital status. If you face problems with discrimination, you can get more information from the Citizens Advice Bureau or from one of the following organisations:

- England and Wales: Equality and Human Rights Commission ([www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com))
- Scotland: Equality and Human Rights Commission in Scotland ([www.equalityhumanrights.com/scotland/the-commission-in-scotland](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com/scotland/the-commission-in-scotland)) and Scottish Human Rights Commission ([www.scottishhumanrights.com](http://www.scottishhumanrights.com))
- Northern Ireland: Equality Commission for Northern Ireland ([www.equalityni.org](http://www.equalityni.org))
- Northern Ireland Human Rights Commission ([www.nihrc.org](http://www.nihrc.org)).

## 5.7 基本原則

英國長年一直尊重個人權利，確保基本自由。這些權利源於大憲章，人身保護法和 1689 年的人權法案，它們都已經發展了一段長時間。英國外交官和律師在草擬《歐洲保障人權和基本自由公約》有重要的作用。英國於 1950 年簽署該公約，是首批簽署的國家之一。

《歐洲人權公約》內一些原則帶：

- 生命權利
- 禁止酷刑
- 禁止奴役和強迫勞工
- 人身自由和安全
- 有權獲得公正審判
- 思想、良心和宗教自由的權利
- 言論自由（發言）

1998 年人權法案把《歐洲人權公約》納入英國法律。政府、公共機構和法院必須遵從公約的原則。

### 5.7.1 平等機會

英國的法律保障人們不會因為他們的年齡、殘疾、性別、懷孕和生育、種族、宗教或信仰、性別或婚姻狀況，在生活或工作等任何領域受到不公平對待。如果你遇到歧視問題，你可以從公民諮詢局或從下面的組織獲得更多的信息：

英格蘭和威爾士：平等與人權委員會([www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com))

蘇格蘭：蘇格蘭平等與人權委員會 ([www.equalityhumanrights.com/scotland/the-commission-in-scotland](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com/scotland/the-commission-in-scotland)) 和蘇格蘭人權委員會 ([www.scottishhumanrights.com](http://www.scottishhumanrights.com))

北愛爾蘭：北愛爾蘭平等委員會 ([www.equalityni.org](http://www.equalityni.org))

北愛爾蘭人權委員會 ([www.nihrc.org](http://www.nihrc.org))。



## 5.7.2 Domestic violence

In the UK, brutality and violence in the home is a serious crime. Anyone who is violent towards their partner – whether they are a man or woman, married or living together – can be prosecuted. Any man who forces a woman to have sex, including a woman's husband, can be charged with rape.

It is important for anyone facing domestic violence to get help as soon as possible. A solicitor or the Citizens Advice Bureau can explain the available options. In some areas there are safe places to go and stay in, called refuges or shelters. There are emergency telephone numbers in the helpline section at the front of Yellow Pages, including, for women, the number of the nearest women's centre. You can also phone the 24-hour National Domestic Violence Freephone Helpline on 0808 2000 247 at any time, or the police can help you find a safe place to stay.

## 5.7.3 Female genital mutilation

Female genital mutilation (FGM), also known as cutting or female circumcision, is illegal in the UK. Practising FGM or taking a girl or woman abroad for FGM is a criminal offence.

## 5.7.4 Forced marriage

A marriage should be entered into with the full and free consent of both people involved. Arranged marriages, where both parties agree to the marriage, are acceptable in the UK.

Forced marriage is where one or both parties do not or cannot give their consent to enter into the partnership. Forcing another person to marry is a criminal offence.

Forced Marriage Protection Orders were introduced in 2008 for England, Wales and Northern Ireland under the Forced Marriage (Civil Protection) Act 2007. Court orders can be obtained to protect a person from being forced into a marriage, or to protect a person in a forced marriage. Similar Protection Orders were introduced in Scotland in November 2011.

A potential victim, or someone acting for them, can apply for an order. Anyone found to have breached an order can be jailed for up to two years for contempt of court.

## 5.7.2 家庭暴力

在英國，家庭暴虐行為是一種嚴重罪行。任何人暴力對待自己的伴侶 – 無論是男或女，已婚或同居，均可以被起訴。任何人誰強迫女子發生性行為（即使是其丈夫）都可被控以強姦罪。

任何面對家庭暴力的人也應盡快尋求協助，事務律師或公民諮詢局可以為你解釋可供選擇。一些地區有避難所或庇護所能提供保護及暫時留所。在黃頁內有求助熱線的緊急電話號碼，包括最近的婦女中心的號碼。你也可以在任何時間致電 24 小時全國家庭暴力熱線免費電話：08082000247，警察亦可幫助你找一個安全的地方暫避。

## 5.7.3 女性生殖器切割

女性生殖器切割 (FGM) 又名女性割禮，在英國是非法的。進行女性生殖器切割或帶女性到國外進行女性生殖器切割都是一種刑事罪行。

## 5.7.4 強迫婚姻

婚姻應建基於兩個人的完全和不受約束的同意。如在「安排婚姻」是雙方同意下，在英國是可以接受的。

強迫婚姻是其中一方或雙方不會或不能同意發展夥伴關係。強迫他人結婚屬刑事罪行。

強迫婚姻保護令是在強迫婚姻法(民事保護) 2007 下，於 2008 年引入了英格蘭，威爾士和北愛爾蘭。法院命令可以保護當事人免被強迫結婚，或保護一個已被迫婚姻的人。蘇格蘭於 2011 年 11 月引入了類似的保護令。

潛在的受害者或代其行事的人可以申請禁令。任何人發現違反禁令可能被控藐視法庭入獄最長兩年。

## 5.8 Taxation

### 5.8.1 Income tax

People in the UK have to pay tax on their income, which includes:

- wages from paid employment
- profits from self-employment
- taxable benefits
- pensions
- income from property, savings and dividends.

Money raised from income tax pays for government services such as roads, education, police and the armed forces.

For most people, the right amount of income tax is automatically taken from their income from employment by their employer and paid directly to HM Revenue & Customs (HMRC), the government department that collects taxes. This system is called 'Pay As You Earn' (PAYE). If you are self-employed, you need to pay your own tax through a system called 'self-assessment', which includes completing a tax return. Other people may also need to complete a tax return. If HMRC sends you a tax return, it is important to complete and return the form as soon as you have all the necessary information.

You can find out more about income tax at [www.hmrc.gov.uk/incometax](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk/incometax). You can get help and advice about taxes and completing tax forms from the HMRC self-assessment helpline, on 0845 300 0627, and the HMRC website at [www.hmrc.gov.uk](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk).

### 5.8.2 National Insurance

Almost everybody in the UK who is in paid work, including self-employed people, must pay National Insurance Contributions. The money raised from National Insurance Contributions is used to pay for state benefits and services such as the state retirement pension and the National Health Service (NHS).

Employees have their National Insurance Contributions deducted from their pay by their employer. People who are self-employed need to pay National Insurance Contributions themselves. Anyone who does not pay enough National Insurance Contributions will not be able to receive certain contributory benefits such as Jobseeker's Allowance or a full state retirement pension. Some workers, such as part-time workers, may not qualify for statutory payments such as maternity pay if they do not earn enough.

Further guidance about National Insurance Contributions is available on HMRC's website at [www.hmrc.gov.uk/ni](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk/ni).

## 5.8 稅項

### 5.8.1 薪俸稅

在英國，人們要為收入交稅，其中包括：

- 就業所得工資
- 自僱收入
- 應稅福利
- 養老金
- 來自房地產，儲蓄和分紅收入

從薪俸稅所得的錢用於支付政府的服務，如道路，教育，警察和軍隊。

對於大多數人來說，薪俸稅會自動由僱主從就業收入扣除，並直接支付給政府的收稅部門 - 英國稅務及海關總署 (HMRC)。這系統被稱為「工資扣繳」(PAYE)。如果你是自僱人士，你需要通過一個名為「自我評估」的系統自己繳稅，包括完成納稅申報。其他人也可能需要完成納稅申報。如果稅務及海關總署向你發送納稅申報表，你必須在得到所有必要資料後盡快填妥並交回表格。你可以在 [www.hmrc.gov.uk/incometax](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk/incometax) 找到更多關於薪俸稅的事項。你可以在稅務及海關總署自評熱線，08453000627，以及網站 [www.hmrc.gov.uk](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk) 得到關於稅金及填寫報稅表的協助和建議。

### 5.8.2 國民保險

在英國，幾乎每個從事有報酬工作的人(包括自僱人士) 都必須繳納國民保險供款。從國民保險供款籌得的款項用於支付國家福利和服務，如國家退休養老金和國民保健服務 (NHS)。

員工的國民保險供款由僱主從他們的工資中扣除。自僱人士需要自己繳付國民保險供款。不給予足夠的國民保險供款的人將無法獲得某些共同福利，如求職者津貼或全州的退休養老金。一些工人，如兼職人員，假如他們不賺到足夠金額，他們可能不符合資格而不能得到法定款項，如產假工資。

稅務及海關總署的網站 [www.hmrc.gov.uk/ni](http://www.hmrc.gov.uk/ni) 有關於國民保險供款的進一步指南。

### 5.8.2.1 Getting a National Insurance number

A National Insurance number is a unique personal account number. It makes sure that the National Insurance Contributions and tax you pay are properly recorded against your name. All young people in the UK are sent a National Insurance number just before their 16th birthday.

A non-UK national living in the UK and looking for work, starting work or setting up as self-employed will need a National Insurance number. However, you can start work without one. If you have permission to work in the UK, you will need to telephone the Department for Work and Pensions (DWP) to arrange to get a National Insurance number. You may be required to attend an interview. The DWP will advise you of the appropriate application process and tell you which documents you will need to bring to an interview if one is necessary. You will usually need documents that prove your identity and that you have permission to work in the UK. A National Insurance number does not on its own prove to an employer that you have the right to work in the UK.

You can find out more information about how to apply for a National Insurance number at [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk).

### 5.8.2.1 獲得國家社會保險號

社會保險號是一個獨特的個人賬戶號碼。它確保你付出的國民保險供款和稅收被正確記錄於你名下。所有在英國的年輕人在 16 歲生日之前會收到一個社會保險號。

非英國國民的人如要在英國居住和找工作，開始工作或自願都需要一個社會保險號。但是，你可以在沒有社會保險號下開始工作。如果你有在英國工作的許可，你將需要致電就業和退休保障部門（DWP）安排取得一個社會保險號。你可能會被要求參加面試。退休保障部門會建議適當的申請程序，並告訴你需要攜帶哪些文件（如有必要）面試。你通常需要你的身份證明文件及在英國工作許可的證明。單靠國民保險號碼不能在雇主面前證明你有在英國工作的權利。

你可以在 [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk) 找到如何申請社會保險號的詳細信息。

## 5.9 Driving

In the UK, you must be at least 17 years old to drive a car or motor cycle and you must have a driving licence to drive on public roads. To get a UK driving licence you must pass a driving test, which tests both your knowledge and your practical skills. You need to be at least 16 years old to ride a moped, and there are other age requirements and special tests for driving large vehicles.

Drivers can use their driving licence until they are 70 years old. After that, the licence is valid for three years at a time.

In Northern Ireland, a newly qualified driver must display an 'R' plate (for restricted driver) for one year after passing the test.

If your driving licence is from a country in the European Union (EU), Iceland, Liechtenstein or Norway, you can drive in the UK for as long as your licence is valid. If you have a licence from any other country, you may use it in the UK for up to 12 months. To continue driving after that, you must get a UK full driving licence.

If you are resident in the UK, your car or motor cycle must be registered at the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA). You must pay an annual road tax and display the tax disc, which shows that the tax has been paid, on the windscreen. You must also have valid motor insurance. It is a serious criminal offence to drive without insurance. If your vehicle is over three years old, you must take it for a Ministry of Transport (MOT) test every year. It is an offence not to have an MOT certificate if your vehicle is more than three years old. You can find out more about vehicle tax and MOT requirements from [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk).

### Check that you understand

- The fundamental principles of UK law
- That domestic violence, FGM and forced marriage are illegal in the UK
- The system of income tax and National Insurance
- The requirements for driving a car

## 5.9 駕駛

在英國，駕駛汽車或電單車的人必須年滿 17 歲，你也必須擁有駕駛執照方可在公路上行駛。要獲得英國駕駛執照，你必須通過考驗你的知識和實際技能的駕駛考試。你必須年滿 16 歲以駕駛助動車，駕駛大型車輛亦有其他年齡限制和專項測試。

司機可以一直使用他們的駕駛執照，直到 70 歲。在此之後，許可證每次有效期為三年。

在北愛爾蘭，新符合資格的司機必須在通過考試後一年間出示 R 牌 (受限制的司機)。

如果你的駕駛執照是由歐洲聯盟 ( 歐盟 ) 國家，冰島，列支敦士登和挪威發出，你可以以有效的駕駛執照在英國開車。如果你有任何其他國家的駕駛執照，它在英國的有效期為 12 個月，其後如要繼續駕駛，你必須得到英國正式駕駛執照。

在北愛爾蘭，新符合資格的司機必須在通過考試後一年間出示 R 牌 (受限制的司機)。

如果你的駕駛執照是由歐洲聯盟 ( 歐盟 ) 國家，冰島，列支敦士登和挪威發出，你可以以有效的駕駛執照在英國開車。如果你有任何其他國家的駕駛執照，它在英國的有效期為 12 個月，其後如要繼續駕駛，你必須得到英國正式駕駛執照。

### Check that you understand

- 英國法律的基本原則
- 家庭暴力，切割女性生殖器和強迫婚姻在英國是非法的
- 薪俸稅和國民保險制度
- 駕駛汽車的要求

## 5.10 Your Role in the Community

Becoming a British citizen or settling in the UK brings responsibilities but also opportunities. Everyone has the opportunity to participate in their community. This section looks at some of the responsibilities of being a citizen and gives information about how you can help to make your community a better place to live and work.

### 5.10.1 Values and responsibilities

Although Britain is one of the world's most diverse societies, there is a set of shared values and responsibilities that everyone can agree with. These values and responsibilities include:

- to obey and respect the law
- to be aware of the rights of others and respect those rights
- to treat others with fairness
- to behave responsibly
- to help and protect your family
- to respect and preserve the environment
- to treat everyone equally, regardless of sex, race, religion, age, disability, class or sexual orientation
- to work to provide for yourself and your family
- to help others
- to vote in local and national government elections.

Taking on these values and responsibilities will make it easier for you to become a full and active citizen

### 5.10.2 Being a good neighbour

When you move into a new house or apartment, introduce yourself to the people who live near you. Getting to know your neighbours can help you to become part of the community and make friends. Your neighbours are also a good source of help – for example, they may be willing to feed your pets if you are away, or offer advice on local shops and services.

You can help prevent any problems and conflicts with your neighbours by respecting their privacy and limiting how much noise you make. Also try to keep your garden tidy, and only put your refuse bags and bins on the street or in communal areas if they are due to be collected.

## 5.10 你在社區中的角色

成為英國公民或定居在英國為你帶來責任及機會。每個人都有機會加他們社區的活動。本節著眼於一些身為公民的責任，並指出你如何可以幫助你的社區成為一個更美好的居住和工作地方。

### 5.10.1 價值觀和責任

雖然英國是世界上最多樣化的國家之一，但有一個共同信念和責任是每個人都可以認同的。這些價值觀和責任包括：

- 服從和尊重法律
- 認清他人的權利和尊重這些權利
- 公平待人
- 對自己的行為負責
- 幫助和保護你的家人
- 尊重和保護環境
- 一視同仁，不分性別，種族，宗教，年齡，殘疾，階級或性取向
- 為自己和家人的生活而工作
- 幫助別人
- 在地方和國家政府選舉中投票

這些價值和責任將讓你更容易成為一個全面和積極的公民

### 5.10.2 作為一個好鄰居

當你搬到一個新的房子或公寓，請向住在周邊的人介紹自己。認識你的鄰居可以幫助你融入成為社區的一部分和廣交朋友。你的鄰居也會為你提供幫助 - 例如，他們可能願意在你不在時餵你的寵物，或提供當地商店和服務的意見。

尊重他們的隱私和限制你製造的噪聲可以幫助防止你與鄰居之間的任何問題和衝突。還有，你也應盡量保持你的花園整潔，只有在收集垃圾時才把你的垃圾袋和垃圾桶放在街上或公共區域。

## 5.10.3 Getting involved in local activities

Volunteering and helping your community are an important part of being a good citizen. They enable you to integrate and get to know other people. It helps to make your community a better place if residents support each other. It also helps you to fulfil your duties as a citizen, such as behaving responsibly and helping others.

## 5.11 How you can Support your Community

There are a number of positive ways in which you can support your community and be a good citizen.

### 5.11.1 Jury service

As well as getting the right to vote, people on the electoral register are randomly selected to serve on a jury. Anyone who is on the electoral register and is aged 18 to 70 can be asked to do this.

### 5.11.2 Helping in schools



Parents often help in classrooms, by supporting activities or listening to children read

If you have children, there are many ways in which you can help at their schools. Parents can often help in classrooms, by supporting activities or listening to children read.

Many schools organise events to raise money for extra equipment or out-of-school activities. Activities might include book sales, toy sales or bringing food to sell. You might have good ideas of your own for raising money. Sometimes events are organised by parent-teacher associations (PTAs). Volunteering to help with their events or joining the association is a way of doing something good for the school and also making new friends in your local community. You can find out about these opportunities from notices in the school or notes your children bring home.

## 5.10.3 參與當地活動

志願服務及幫助你的社區是作為一個好公民的重要部分。這讓你能夠融入並了解其他人。居民相互支持能令你的社區變得更美好。它還幫助你履行你作為一個公民的職責，如良好表現，負責任的行為和幫助他人。

## 5.11 如何支持你的社區

你有多種方法可以支持你的社區及成為做一個好公民。

### 5.11.1 擔任陪審員的義務

除了獲得投票權，選民登記冊中的人們會被隨機挑選出來成為陪審員。任何在選民登記冊中，並是 18 至 70 歲的人均可以被要求成為陪審員。

家長經常以支持活動或聆聽孩子讀書的方式在教室幫助。

### 5.11.2 在學校內幫忙

如果你有孩子，你有許多方法可以幫助他們的學校。家長經常以支持活動或聆聽孩子讀書的方式在教室幫助。

許多學校組織活動以籌款購買額外設備或校外活動的資金。活動可能包括圖書銷售，玩具銷售或食品銷售。你可能有一套籌集資金的好主意。有時候，活動是由家長教師聯會（家教會）主辦。志願參與協辦活動或加入聯會是為學校作出貢獻及結交當地朋友的好方式。你可以從學校告示或孩子帶回家的通告得知這些機會。

### 5.11.2.1 School governors and school boards

School governors, or members of the school board in Scotland, are people from the local community who wish to make a positive contribution to children's education. They must be aged 18 or over at the date of their election or appointment. There is no upper age limit.

Governors and school boards have an important part to play in raising school standards. They have three key roles:

- setting the strategic direction of the school
- ensuring accountability
- monitoring and evaluating school performance.

You can contact your local school to ask if they need a new governor or school board member. In England, you can also apply online at the School Governors' One-Stop Shop at [www.sgoss.org.uk](http://www.sgoss.org.uk). In England, parents and other community groups can apply to open a free school in their local area. More information about this can be found on the Department for Education website at [www.dfe.gov.uk](http://www.dfe.gov.uk).

### 5.11.3 Supporting political parties

Political parties welcome new members. Joining one is a way to demonstrate your support for certain views and to get involved in the democratic process.

Political parties are particularly busy at election times. Members work hard to persuade people to vote for their candidates – for instance, by handing out leaflets in the street or by knocking on people's doors and asking for their support. This is called 'canvassing'. You don't have to tell a canvasser how you intend to vote if you don't want to.

British citizens can stand for Office as a local councillor, a member of Parliament (or the devolved equivalents) or a member of the European Parliament. This is an opportunity to become even more involved in the political life of the UK. You may also be able to stand for Office if you are an Irish citizen, an eligible Commonwealth citizen or (except for standing to be an MP) a citizen of another EU country.

You can find out more about joining a political party from the individual party websites.

### 5.11.4 Helping with local services

There are opportunities to volunteer with a wide range of local service providers, including local hospitals and youth projects. Services often want to involve local people in decisions about the way in which they work. Universities, housing associations, museums and arts councils may advertise for people to serve as volunteers in their governing bodies.

You can volunteer with the police, and become a special constable or a lay (non-police) representative. You can also apply to become a magistrate. You will often find advertisements for vacancies in your local newspaper or on local radio. You can also find out more about these sorts of roles at [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk).

### 5.11.2.1 學校管理者和校董會

學校管理者或蘇格蘭的學校董事會成員都是當地社區那些希望為小童教育做出了積極貢獻的人。他們在選舉或任命之日起必須年滿 18 歲或以上，沒有年齡上限。

管理者和校董會對於提高教育水平方面發揮著重要的作用。他們有三個關鍵角色：

- 制定學校的策略方向
- 被授予權力下的負責
- 監測和評估學校的表現

你可以聯繫當地學校，詢問他們是否需要新的管理者或學校董事會成員。在英格蘭，你也可以在學校管理一站通 [www.sgoss.org.uk](http://www.sgoss.org.uk) 通進行網上申請。

在英國，家長和其他社會團體可申請在當地區域開設免費學校。關於這方面的更多信息可以在教育部門網站 [www.dfe.gov.uk](http://www.dfe.gov.uk) 上找到。

### 5.11.3 支持其它政黨

政黨歡迎新成員。加入政黨能表現你對某些觀點的支持及認同，並參與民主進程。

政黨是在選舉時特別繁忙。黨員努力遊說人們投票支持他們的候選人，例如在大街上派發傳單或者上門尋求人們的支持，這就是所謂的「拉票」。如果你不想，你可以不告訴遊說者你的投票取向。

英國公民可以參加競選成為當地的議員，議會成員（或分權政體下同等職位）或歐洲議會成員。這是一個更積極參與英國的政治生活的好機會。如果你是愛爾蘭公民，合格的英聯邦公民，或其他歐盟國家的公民（除了成為議會成員外），你也可以參選。

你可以從個別政黨網站找到更多關於加入政黨的資料。

### 5.11.4 參與當地服務

如當地醫院和青年項目等本地服務機構提供廣泛的志願服務機會。服務往往希望當地市民參與決定他們的工作方式。大學，房屋協會，博物館和藝術委員可能會作宣傳以招募志願者協助其理事機構。

你可以與志願幫忙警方，並成為一個特殊的（低級別）警察或外行（非警務）代表。你也可以申請成為裁判官。你會在當地報紙或當地電台廣告找到這些職位的空缺。你也可以在 [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk) 找到更多關於這種些角色的資料。

## 5.11.5 Blood and organ donation

Donated blood is used by hospitals to help people with a wide range of injuries and illnesses. Giving blood only takes about an hour to do. You can register to give blood at:

- England and North Wales: [www.blood.co.uk](http://www.blood.co.uk)
- Rest of Wales: [www.welsh-blood.org.uk](http://www.welsh-blood.org.uk)
- Scotland: [www.scotblood.co.uk](http://www.scotblood.co.uk)
- Northern Ireland: [www.nibts.org](http://www.nibts.org)

Many people in the UK are waiting for organ transplants. If you register to be an organ donor, it can make it easier for your family to decide whether to donate your organs when you die. You can register to be an organ donor at [www.organdonation.nhs.uk](http://www.organdonation.nhs.uk). Living people can also donate a kidney.

## 5.11.6 Other ways to volunteer

Volunteering is working for good causes without payment. There are many benefits to volunteering, such as meeting new people helping make your community a better place. Some volunteer activities will give you a chance to practise your English or develop work skills that will help you find a job or improve your curriculum vitae (CV). Many people volunteer simply because they want to help other people.

Activities you can do as a volunteer include:

- working with animals – for example, caring for animals at a local rescue shelter
- youth work – for example, volunteering at a youth group
- helping improve the environment – for example, participating in a litter pick-up in the local area
- working with the homeless in, for example, a homelessness shelter
- mentoring – for example, supporting someone who has just come out of prison
- work in health and hospitals – for example, working on an information desk in a hospital
- helping older people at, for example, a residential care home.

## 5.11.5 捐血及器官捐贈

捐贈的血液是用於醫院來幫助各種受傷和疾病的人。捐血只需要一個小時左右。你可以在以下地方註冊捐血：

- 英格蘭和威爾士北部: [www.blood.co.uk](http://www.blood.co.uk)
- 威爾士其他地方: [www.welsh-blood.org.uk](http://www.welsh-blood.org.uk)
- 蘇格蘭: [www.scotblood.co.uk](http://www.scotblood.co.uk)
- 北愛爾蘭: [www.nibts.org](http://www.nibts.org)

## 5.11.6 其他志願服務的途徑

志願服務是為公益事業而不收報酬的工作。志願服務有很多好處，如結識新朋友，並幫助使你的社區變得更美好。一些志願活動將會給你練習英語或開發工作技能的機會，有助於你找到一份工作或改進你的履 (CV)。很多志願人仕僅僅是因為他們想幫助其他人而參與服務。

你可以參與的志願服務活動有：

- 幫助工作 - 例如在當地救助站照料動物
- 青年工作 - 例如在青年小組服務
- 幫助改善環境 - 例如參加清潔當地垃圾
- 幫助無家可歸的人，例如在無家可歸者庇護所服務• 作為指導人 - 例如協助剛出獄的人
- 在衛生和醫院工作 - 例如在醫院信息服務台工作
- 幫助老人 - 例如在安老院





Voluntary organization work to improve the lives of people, animals and environment in many different ways

There are thousands of active charities and voluntary organisations in the UK. They work to improve the lives of people, animals and the environment in many different ways. They range from the British branches of international organisations, such as the British Red Cross, to small local charities working in particular areas. They include charities working with older people (such as Age UK), with children (for example, the National Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children (NSPCC)), and with the homeless (for example, Crisis and Shelter). There are also medical research charities (for example, Cancer Research UK), environmental charities (including the National Trust and Friends of the Earth) and charities working with animals (such as the People's Dispensary for Sick Animals (PDSA)).

Volunteers are needed to help with their activities and to raise money. The charities often advertise in local newspapers, and most have websites that include information about their opportunities. You can also get information about volunteering for different organisations from [www.do-it.org.uk](http://www.do-it.org.uk).

There are many opportunities for young people to volunteer and receive accreditation which will help them to develop their skills. These include the National Citizen Service programme, which gives 16- and 17-year-olds the opportunity to enjoy outdoor activities, develop their skills and take part in a community project. You can find out more about these opportunities as follows:

- National Citizen Service: at [nationalcitizenservice.direct.gov.uk](http://nationalcitizenservice.direct.gov.uk)
- England: at [www.vinspired.com](http://www.vinspired.com)
- Wales: at [www.gwirvol.org](http://www.gwirvol.org)
- Scotland: at [www.vds.org.uk](http://www.vds.org.uk)
- Northern Ireland: at [www.volunteernow.co.uk](http://www.volunteernow.co.uk)

志願組織以許多不同的方式生活去提高人、動物和環境的生活

在英國有數以千計的活躍慈善機構和志願組織。他們以許多不同的方式努力改善人、動物和環境的生活。它們的規模從國際組織分支，如英國紅十字會，到在特定領域工作的小型地方慈善機構。它們包括服務老年人（如 Age UK）、小童（例如全國防止虐待兒童協會 (NSPCC)）、與無家可歸者（例如 Crisis 和 Shelter）等慈善機構，也有醫學研究慈善機構（例如英國癌症研究中心）、環保組織（包括國民信託和地球之友）和幫助動物的慈善機構（如人民獸醫藥房 (PDSA)）。

這些慈善機構需要志願者幫助他們辦活動和籌集資金。慈善機構經常在當地報紙上宣傳，大部分都會出示他們的網站讓你可以得知它們提供的機會。你還可以從 [www.do-it.org.uk](http://www.do-it.org.uk) 得到關於參與志願組織活動的信息。

年輕人也有機會參與志願服務和接收認證，這將有助他們發展技能。其中包括國家公民服務計劃，這給 16–17 歲的青少年享受戶外活動的機會，發展他們的技能，並讓他們參與社區項目。

你可以在以下地方找到更多關於這些機會的資料：

- 全國公民服務: [nationalcitizenservice.direct.gov.uk](http://nationalcitizenservice.direct.gov.uk)
- 英國: 在 [www.vinspired.com](http://www.vinspired.com)
- 威爾士: 在 [www.gwirvol.org](http://www.gwirvol.org)
- 蘇格蘭: 在 [www.vds.org.uk](http://www.vds.org.uk)
- 北愛爾蘭: 在 [www.volunteernow.co.uk](http://www.volunteernow.co.uk)

## 5.12 Looking After the Environment

It is important to recycle as much of your waste as you can. Using recycled materials to make new products uses less energy and means that we do not need to extract more raw materials from the earth. It also means that less rubbish is created, so the amount being put into landfill is reduced.

You can learn more about recycling and its benefits at [www.recyclenow.com](http://www.recyclenow.com). At this website you can also find out what you can recycle at home and in the local area if you live in England. This information is available for Wales at [www.wasteawarenesswales.org.uk](http://www.wasteawarenesswales.org.uk), for Scotland at [www.recycleforscotland.com](http://www.recycleforscotland.com) and for Northern Ireland from your local authority.

A good way to support your local community is to shop for products locally where you can. This will help businesses and farmers in your area and in Britain. It will also reduce your carbon footprint, because the products you buy will not have had to travel as far.

Walking and using public transport to get around when you can is also a good way to protect the environment. It means that you create less pollution than when you use a car.

### Check that you understand

- The different ways you can help at your child's school
- The role of school governors and members of school boards, and how you can become one
- The role of members of political parties
- The different local services people can volunteer to support
- How to donate blood and organs
- The benefits of volunteering for you, other people and the community
- The types of activities that volunteers can do
- How you can look after the environment

## 5.12 保護環境

盡可能回收廢物是十分重要的。使用循環再用材料製造新產品及使用更少的能源，意味著我們不需要從地球提取更多的資源及物料。這也意味著，製造更少的垃圾，倒進堆填區的垃圾也更少。

你可以在 [www.recyclenow.com](http://www.recyclenow.com) 找到更多關於回收和它的好處。如果你住在英國，這個網站也能告知你可以在家裡和在當地回收的東西。在威爾士的同類信息可在 [www.wasteawarenesswales.org.uk](http://www.wasteawarenesswales.org.uk) 找到，蘇格蘭在 [www.recycleforscotland.com](http://www.recycleforscotland.com) 和北愛爾蘭從當地部門。

支持當地社區的一個好方法是在本地購物。這將幫助你在所在地區和英國的企業和農民。由於你買的產品不需長途運輸，這也能減少你的碳足跡。步行和乘坐公共交通工具也是保護環境的好方法。這意味著你會比駕私家汽車製造更少污染。

### Check that you understand

- 不同幫助你的孩子的學校的方法
- 學校管理者和學校董事會成員的角色，以及你如何成為其中一份子
- 政黨成員的作用
- 可以志願參與及協助的不同地方服務組織
- 如何捐血和捐贈器官

# Glossary

This glossary will help readers to understand the meanings of key words that appear in this handbook.

When words may be difficult to understand, an example of use may follow the definition.

The word that is bracketed after an entry relates to the particular context in which the word is being defined – for example, arrested (police).

A slash (/) separates different definitions.

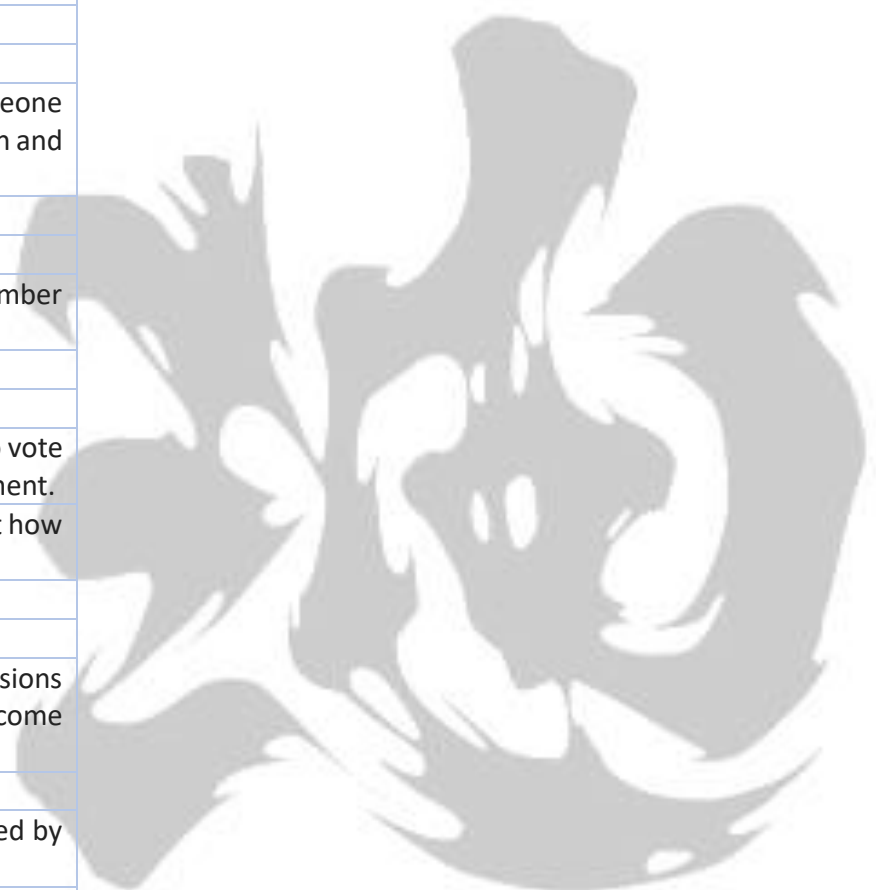
<b>A</b>	
<b>AD</b>	Anno Domini – referring to the number of years after the birth of Jesus Christ – used as a time reference.
<b>allegiance</b>	Loyalty to something- for example, to a leader, a faith or a country.
<b>armed forces</b>	The army, navy and air force which defend a country in times of peace and war.
<b>arrested (police)</b>	Taken by the police to a police station and made to stay there to answer questions about illegal actions or activity.
<b>assault</b>	The criminal act of using physical force against someone or attacking someone – for example, hitting someone.
<b>B</b>	
<b>bank holiday</b>	A day when most people have an official day off work and many businesses are closed. A bank holiday can also be called a public holiday.
<b>baron</b>	A man who has one of the ranks of the British nobility. The title was particularly common during the Middle Ages.
<b>BC</b>	Before Christ – referring to the number of years before Jesus Christ was born – used as a time reference.
<b>bishop</b>	A senior member of the clergy in the Christian religion, often in charge of the churches in a particular area.
<b>boom</b>	A sharp rise in something – very often in business activity or the economy.
<b>brutality</b>	Behaviour towards another which is cruel and violent and causes harm.
<b>by-election</b>	An election held in a parliamentary constituency or local authority area to fill a vacancy (see also general election).



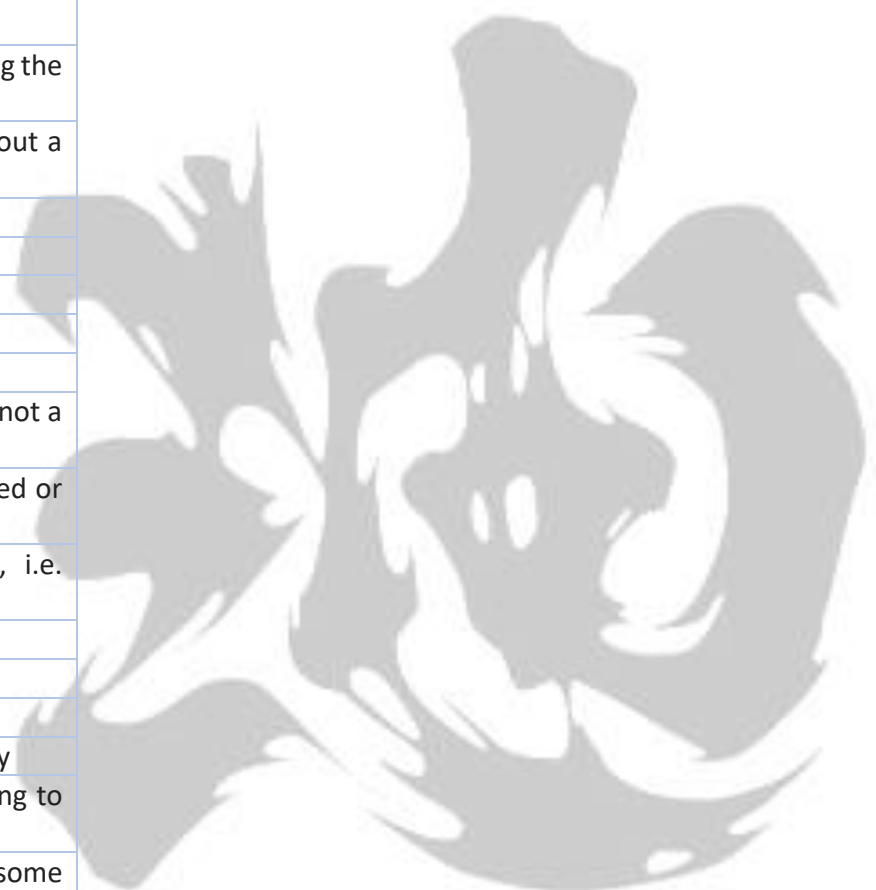
<b>C</b>	
<b>cabinet (government)</b>	A group of senior ministers who are responsible for controlling government policy.
<b>casualties (medical)</b>	People who are wounded or killed (for example, in a war).
<b>charter (government)</b>	An official written statement which describes the rights and responsibilities of a state and its citizens.
<b>chieftain</b>	The leader of a clan in Scotland or Ireland.
<b>civil disobedience</b>	The refusal of members of the public to obey laws, often because they want to protest against political issues.
<b>civil law</b>	The legal system that deals with the disputes between people or groups of people.
<b>civil service</b>	The departments within the government which manage the business of running the country – people who work for the government can be called civil servants.
<b>civil war</b>	A war between groups who live in the same country.
<b>clan</b>	A group of people or families who live under the rule of a chieftain and may be descendants of the same person – a term used traditionally in Scotland.
<b>clergy</b>	Religious leaders, used here to describe religious leaders in Christian churches.
<b>coalition</b>	A partnership between different political parties.
<b>colonise</b>	Inhabit and take control of another country. People who colonise are called colonists.
<b>commemorate</b>	Show that something or someone is remembered.
<b>conquered</b>	Beaten in battle.
<b>constituency</b>	A specific area where the voters who live in that place(its constituents) can elect an MP to represent them in the parliament.
<b>constitution (law)</b>	The legal structure of established laws and principles which is used to govern a country.
<b>convention (government)</b>	An agreement, often between countries, about particular rules or codes of behavior.
<b>criminal law</b>	The legal system that deals with illegal activities.
<b>D</b>	
<b>decree (law)</b>	Official order, law or decision.
<b>democratic country</b>	A country which is governed by people who are elected by the population to represent them in Parliament.
<b>devolution</b>	The passing of power from a central government to another group at a regional or local level, which can then be called a devolved administration.



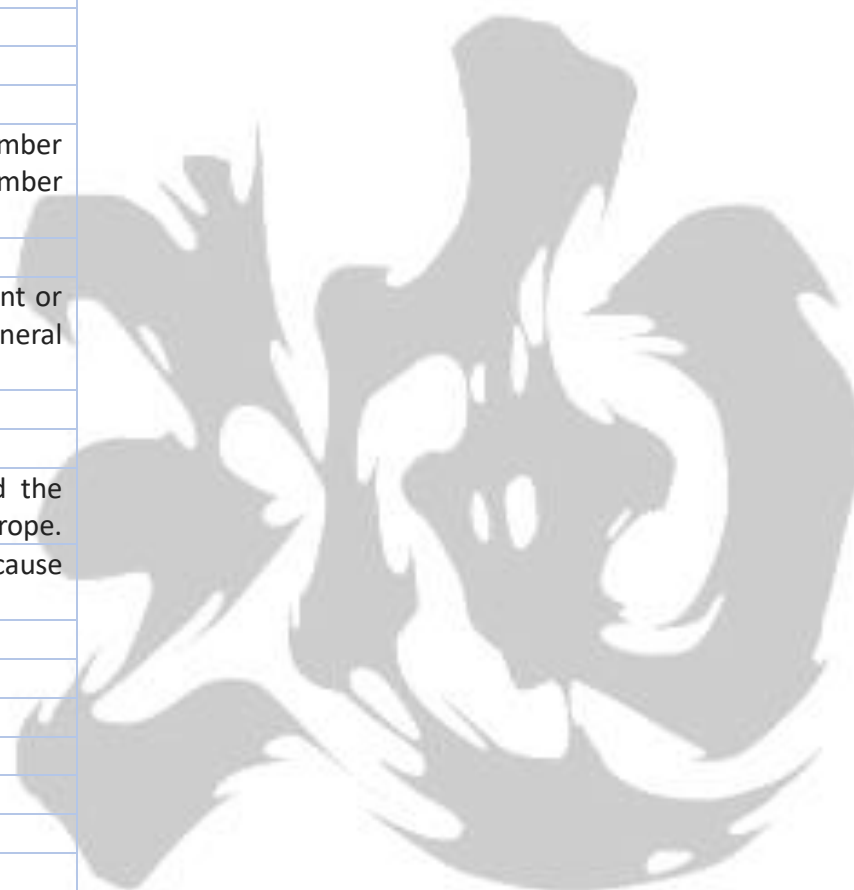
<b>dialect</b>	A form of a language spoken by a particular group or people living in a particular area.
<b>domestic policies</b>	Political decisions that relate to what is happening within a country (as opposed to in another country).
<b>E</b>	
<b>electoral register</b>	The official list of all the people in a country who are allowed to vote in an election.
<b>electorate</b>	All the people who are allowed to vote in an election.
<b>eligible</b>	Allowed by law.
<b>ethnic origin</b>	The country of birth, someone's race or the nationality of someone when they were born/the customs and place from which a person and their family originated (or came from).
<b>executed</b>	Killed as a punishment.
<b>F</b>	
<b>first past the post</b>	A system of election in which the candidate with the largest number of votes in a particular constituency wins a seat in Parliament.
<b>franchise</b>	The right to vote.
<b>G</b>	
<b>General Election</b>	An event in which all the citizens of a country who are allowed to vote choose the people they wish to represent them in their government.
<b>government policies</b>	Official ideas and beliefs that are agreed by a political party about how to govern the country.
<b>guilty</b>	Found by a court to have done something which is illegal.
<b>H</b>	
<b>heir</b>	Someone who will legally receive a person's money or possessions after their death. The heir to the throne is the person who will become the next king or queen.
<b>House (history)</b>	A family (for example, House of York).
<b>House of commons</b>	That part of the houses of Parliament where MPs who are elected by the voting public debate political issues.
<b>House of Lords</b>	That part of Houses of Parliament where people who have inherited their place or been chosen by the government debate political issues.
<b>household</b>	A home and the people who live in it/something that relates to a home. (For example, household chores are tasks that are done around the house, such as cleaning and cooking).
<b>Houses of Parliament</b>	The building in London where the House of Commons and House of Lords meet.



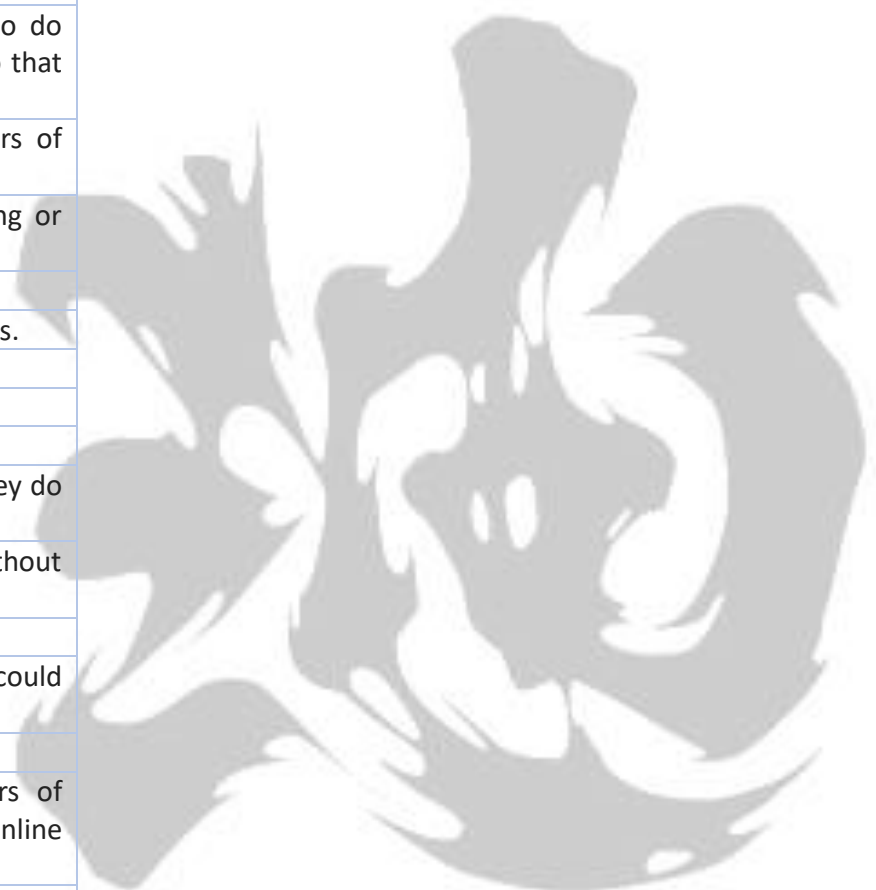
<b>I</b>	
<b>illegal</b>	Something which the law does not allow.
<b>infrastructure</b>	Structured network that is necessary for successful operation of a business or transport system – for example, roads or railways.
<b>innocent (law)</b>	Found by a court not to have done something illegal.
<b>J</b>	
<b>judge</b>	The most important official in court. The judge makes sure what happens in court is fair and legal
<b>judiciary</b>	All the judges in a country. Together, they are responsible for using the law of the land in the correct way.
<b>jury (legal)</b>	People who are chosen to sit in court, listen to information about a crime, and decide if someone is guilty or innocent.
<b>L</b>	
<b>legal</b>	Allowed to do so by law.
<b>Legislative power</b>	The power to make laws.
<b>liberty</b>	Freedom.
<b>M</b>	
<b>magistrate</b>	A person who acts as a judge in a court case where the crime is not a serious one.
<b>marital status</b>	Information about whether a person is single, married, separated or divorced. This is often asked for on official forms.
<b>media, the</b>	All the organizations which give information to the public, i.e. newspaper, magazines, television, radio and the internet.
<b>medieval/Middle Ages</b>	In history, the period between 1066 and about 1500.
<b>monarch</b>	The king or queen of a country.
<b>N</b>	
<b>national issues</b>	Political problems that can affect everyone who lives in a country
<b>nationalised</b>	Bought and then controlled by the central government – relating to an industry or service that was previously owned privately.
<b>nobility</b>	The people in a country who belong to the highest social class, some of whom may have titles – for example, Lord, Duke, Baron.
<b>office, to be in</b>	To be in power in government.
<b>O</b>	
<b>Olympics</b>	International sporting event held every four years.
<b>opposition</b>	In House of Commons, the largest political party which is not part of the government is officially known as the opposition.



<b>P</b>	
<b>Pale (history)</b>	Part of Ireland governed by the English.
<b>party politics</b>	The shared ideas and beliefs of an organized group of politicians.
<b>patron saint</b>	A Christian saint who is believed to protect a particular area or group of people.
<b>penalty (law)</b>	Punishment for breaking the law.
<b>Pope, the</b>	The head of the Roman Catholic Church.
<b>practice a religion</b>	Live according to the rules and beliefs of a religion.
<b>Prime Minister</b>	The politician who leads the government.
<b>prohibit/prohibition</b>	Make something illegal.
<b>proportional representation</b>	A system of election in which political parties are allowed a number of seats in Parliament that represents their share of the total number of the votes cast.
<b>Protestants</b>	Christians who are not members of the Roman Catholic Church
<b>public body</b>	A governmental department or a group of people who represent or work for the government and who work for the good of the general public.
<b>public house/pub</b>	A place where adults can buy and drink alcohol.
<b>R</b>	
<b>Reformation, the</b>	The religious movement in the 16th century that challenged the authority of the Pope and established Protestants churches in Europe.
<b>refugee</b>	A person who must leave the country where they live, often because of a war or for political reasons.
<b>residence</b>	The place where someone lives.
<b>rival viewpoints</b>	Opinions held by different groups of people.
<b>rural</b>	Countryside
<b>S</b>	
<b>scrutinise</b>	Examine all the details.
<b>seat (Parliament)</b>	A constituency.
<b>sentence</b>	A punishment imposed by a court.
<b>shadow cabinet</b>	Senior MPs of a political party not in government.
<b>sheriff(law)</b>	A judge in Scotland.
<b>slavery</b>	A system in which people bought and sold other people (slaves) who were forced to work without pay.
<b>sonnet</b>	A poem which is 14 lines long and rhymes in particular way.
<b>Speaker, the</b>	The member of the House of Commons who controls the way issues are debated in parliament.
<b>stand for office</b>	Apply to be elected – for example, as an MP or councillor.
<b>strike, to go on</b>	Refuse to work in order to protest against something.



<b>successor (government)</b>	A person who comes after another and takes over an office or receives some kind of power – for example, a son who becomes king when his father dies is his successor.
<b>suspend</b>	To stop something from happening or operating, usually for a short time.
<b>T</b>	
<b>terrorism</b>	Violence used by people who want to force a government to do something. The violence is usually random and unexpected, so that no one can feel really safe from it.
<b>The Phone book</b>	A book which contains names, addresses and phone numbers of organizations, businesses and individuals.
<b>theft</b>	The criminal act of stealing something from a person, building or place.
<b>trade unions</b>	An association of workers formed to protect its members.
<b>treaty</b>	An official written agreement between countries or governments.
<b>U</b>	
<b>Uprising</b>	A violent revolt or rebellion against an authority.
<b>V</b>	
<b>voluntary work</b>	Work which someone does because they want to and which they do for free, i.e. they do not receive any payment.
<b>volunteer</b>	Someone who works for free or who offers to do something without payment (see voluntary work).
<b>W</b>	
<b>war effort</b>	The work people did in order to help the country in any way they could during wartime.
<b>Y</b>	
<b>Yellow Pages</b>	A book that lists names, addresses and telephone numbers of businesses, services and organizations in an area. Also available online at <a href="http://www.yell.com">www.yell.com</a>





力

力